

MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE CHEMICAL COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

MISSION TRAINING PLAN for the Chemical Company Headquarters

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
Table of Contents	i
PREFACE	ii
Chapter 1. Unit Training	1-1
Chapter 2. Training Matrixes	2-1
2-1. General	2-1
2-2. Mission-to-Collective Tasks Matrix	2-1
Chapter 3. Mission Outlines / Training Plans	3-1
Chapter 4. Training Exercise	4-1
Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines	5-1
Chapter 6. External Evaluation	6-1
APPENDIX A - SAMPLE EVALUATION SCENARIO	A-1
APPENDIX B - COMBINED-ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY (CATS)	B-1
APPENDIX C - THREAT ANALYSIS	C-1
APPENDIX D - METRIC CONVERSION CHART	D-1
Glossary	Glossary-1
References	References-1
Questionnaire	Questionnaire-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

DESTRUCTION NOTICE: Follow the procedures in AR 380-5, chapter IX.

*This ARTEP supersedes ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP, dated 9 April 1998.

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides the Active Component (AC) and the Reserve Component (RC) training manager with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are the principal ones that chemical companies are expected to execute with a high-level of proficiency. Unit leaders use their mission-essential task list (METL) to identify the collective tasks in this MTP that must be trained. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) listed in this MTP. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This document is in alignment with and part of the United States (US) Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP is used to assess the company's ability to provide command and control (C²) and support to its assigned or attached platoons for smoke; decontamination; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) reconnaissance; or biosurveillance/biodetection operations. Chemical units can be task-organized with their reconnaissance, decontamination, and smoke capabilities tailored to support any type operation. Scenarios can be developed using the T&EOs contained herein. These scenarios will be based on their operations other than war (OOTW) mission and will vary only in the nature of the threat and conditions from the situational training exercises (STXs) presented.

This MTP applies to chemical units organized under the following table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE):

- 03057L000 - Chemical Company (Smoke/Decontamination) (Airborne/Air Assault)
- 03157L100 - Chemical Company Heavy Division (National Guard)
- 03157L200 - Chemical Company Heavy Division (Active Component)
- 03333L000 - Chemical Company (Smoke/Decontamination) Armored Cavalry Regiment (ACR)
- 03377L100 - Chemical Company (Smoke/Decontamination/Reconnaissance) ACR (Wheel)
- 03377L200 - Chemical Company (Smoke/Decontamination/Reconnaissance) ACR (Track)
- 03427L000 - NBC Reconnaissance Company
- 03437L000 - Chemical Company (Smoke Generator [SG])
- 03567L000 - Chemical Company (Corps)
- 03477A000 - Chemical Company (Biological Detection)

The proponent of this publication is Headquarters (HQ) US Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). Submit changes for improving this publication on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) and forward it to Commandant, US Army Maneuver Support Center (MANSCEN), ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-C, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the--

- Unit's METL.
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC) factors.
- Training priorities of the unit.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program, which is part of the next higher echelon's training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit's training program consists of the following publications:

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 3-116-MTP, which describes the missions and tasks for the chemical brigade or battalion.

b. ARTEP 3-457-10-MTP, which describes the mission and tasks for the smoke/decontamination platoon.

c. ARTEP 3-477-10-MTP, which describes the mission and tasks for the biological detection platoon/long-range biological detection team (equipped with the Biological Integrated Detection System [BIDS] and the Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System [LRBDS]).

d. ARTEP 3-207-10-MTP, which describes the mission and tasks for the NBC reconnaissance platoon.

e. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill level.

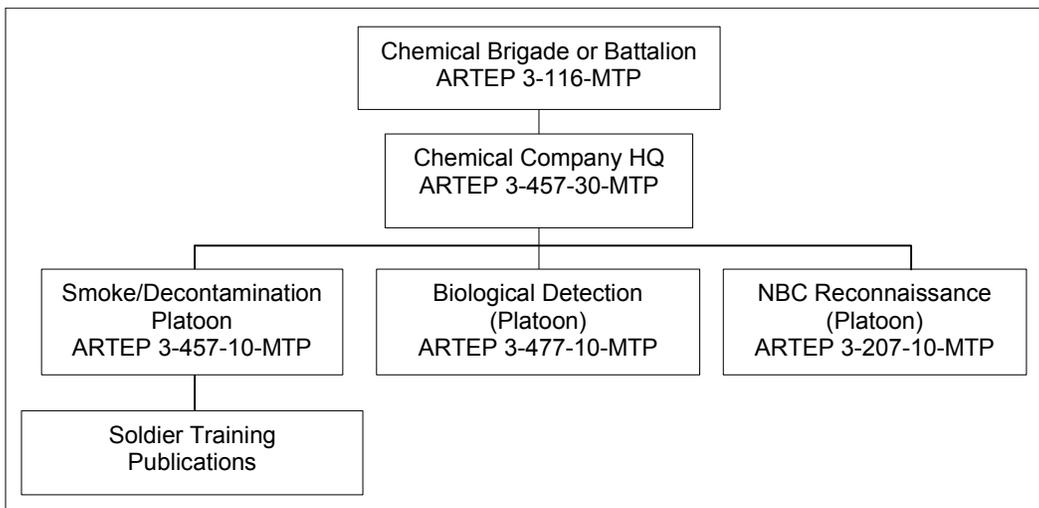


Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and four appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationships between missions, collective tasks, and individual tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, provides a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks. It is designed to determine training activities whose performance is needed to achieve critical wartime proficiency.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of field training exercises (FTXs) and supporting STXs. They provide training information and a preconstructed scenario. Also, they can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of this unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training and evaluation criteria for all the tasks this unit must master to effectively perform its critical wartime mission. These training objectives serve as the lowest level of collective training performed by the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies tasks steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) counter tasks. Each task is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes training objectives of larger training exercises, such as those exercises in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations, provides guidelines for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation of your unit.

g. Appendix A, Sample Evaluation Scenario, contains a sample scenario.

h. Appendix B, Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS), contains an explanation of the links between CATS and the Standard Army Training System (SATS) and how CATS can assist training managers with training in a combined-arms environment.

i. Appendix C, Threat Analysis, describes the local, regional, and global threat as well as special situations that impact operations.

j. Appendix D, Metric Conversion Chart, shows how to convert US and metric measurements.

1-4. Missions:

a. Excluding tasks common to all tactical units, chemical companies have the following four critical wartime missions:

- (1) Provide NBC reconnaissance.
- (2) Provide NBC decontamination.
- (3) Provide smoke operations.
- (4) Provide biological surveillance/detection.

The wartime missions are composed of collective tasks that the company must perform to accomplish the mission. Only the heavy division, motorized division, and ACR chemical companies have all four wartime missions. Leaders of other type companies select only the FTXs, STXs, and T&EOs in the following chapters that support their wartime mission. This MTP contains training material for all chemical companies, including descriptions of C² and support tasks that all Army companies must perform. Separate brigades or higher chemical staff sections are a part of some chemical companies, and

company leaders must perform C² and support tasks for these sections. Their tasks, however, are not considered in this MTP. Chemical section and NBC center (NBCC) missions and tasks are prescribed in ARTEP 3-117-40-MTP.

b. Each of these types of tasks requires different types of training. Section tasks are trained singly according to the training objective provided in the T&EO. Several tasks, defined by the T&EO, can be developed into an STX. Several STXs can be developed into an FTX for your unit to practice or perform its entire mission responsibility. Finally, several FTXs can be developed into an external evaluation designed to evaluate your unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Individual tasks are mastered through training to standard in the appropriate STP. The individual tasks listed after each collective task in Chapter 5 are the soldier's manual (SM) tasks that support collective task training. You must determine those individual tasks that must be mastered by all members of the company before it begins collective training.

d. Leader tasks that support the unit's mission are trained through STP and military qualification standards (MQS) training, battle simulations, and execution of this unit's missions.

1-5. Principles of Training. This MTP is based on the training principles in Field Manual (FM) 25-100.

a. Train as a Combined-Arms-and-Services Team. Today's Army doctrine requires combined-arms-and-services teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined-arms-and-services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Leaders must regularly practice cross-attachment of the full wartime spectrum of combat, combat support, and combat service support units.

b. Train as You Fight. The goal of combat-level training is to achieve combat-level standards. Every effort must be made to attain this difficult goal. Within the confines of safety and common sense, leaders must be willing to accept less-than-perfect results initially and demand realism in training. They must integrate such realistic conditions as smoke, noise, simulated NBC, battlefield debris, loss of key leaders, and hot and cold weather.

c. Use Appropriate Doctrine. Training must conform to Army doctrine. In units, new soldiers will have little time to learn nonstandard procedures. Therefore, units must train on peacetime training tasks to Army standards contained in mission training plans, drill books, soldier's manuals, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications.

d. Use Performance-Oriented Training. Units become more proficient in the performance of critical tasks and missions by practicing the tasks and missions. Soldiers learn best by doing, using a hands-on approach. Leaders are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that provides these opportunities. All training assets and resources, to include simulators, simulants, and training devices must be included in the strategy.

e. Train to Challenge. Tough, realistic, intellectually and physically challenging training both excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Challenging training inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

f. Train to Sustain Proficiency. Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical-task training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustainment. MTPs and the Individual Training Evaluation Program (ITEP) are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

g. **Train Using Multiechelon Techniques.** To use available time and resources most effectively, commanders must simultaneously train individuals, leaders, and units at each echelon in the organization during the training event.

h. **Train to Maintain.** Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Maintenance training designed to keep equipment in the fight is as important to soldiers as being expert in its use. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in support of the training or combat equipment.

i. **Make Commanders the Primary Trainers.** The leaders in the chain of command are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organizations.

1-6. **Training Strategy.** The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions is a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify tools and critical resources that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and training resources required to train to standard. See Appendix B for additional information on CATS.

1-7. **Conducting Training.** This MTP is designed to facilitate the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in the FM 25-series. The commander--

a. Assigns the missions for the company to train, based on the company's prioritized mission list. One high-priority mission or task for the training period is to provide NBC decontamination. You must then plan the company's training to support the training guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outlines in Chapter 3 to determine what STXs are needed to train to meet the training guidance, then reviews the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a list of collective, leader, and individual SM tasks that the element must master to perform the mission.

c. Identifies the tasks that need training. There will never be time to train everything. You must orient on the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills. Hold a training meeting with key officers and noncommissioned officers (NCOs) to determine those collective/individual tasks and exercises that need training and those the unit can already perform.

d. Determines the types of training aids and equipment needed to conduct the training, such as ammunition, maps, Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System (MILES) gear, suitable training areas, and the unit's organic equipment. Coordinate before the training to ensure that training aids and equipment are available.

e. Keeps subordinate leaders informed and oversees their training. Require rigid enforcement of all standards to ensure that the unit's later training does not suffer.

f. Conducts leader training in preparation for each STX. This requires at least two training sessions. In the first session, discuss key training points for the STX. Leaders should explain their role in the STX. Then the unit should perform the STX.

1-8. **Force Protection (Safety).** Safety is a component of force protection (FM 100-5).

a. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment (RA) and risk management (RM) to tie force protection into the military decision-making process and build force protection (safety and RA/RM) around the mission. Risk management fixes responsibility, institutionalizes the commander's review of operational safety, and leads to decision-making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of force protection is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention. This enables units to train and win fast and decisively, with minimum losses of personnel and equipment.

Safety is an integral part of all training operations, combat operations, and OOTW. Safety begins with readiness, which determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are--

- (1) Individual soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.
- (2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.
- (3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.
- (4) Standards and procedures for task preference that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support for task preference, including the required equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. RM addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but it also helps identify who will have the next accident. Once understood, RM is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Force protection (safety and RA/RM) demands total chain of command (three-tiered approach to safety) involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The following paragraphs describe the chain-of-command responsibilities.

- (1) Commanders.
 - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
 - (b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.
 - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
 - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
 - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use RM concepts.
- (2) Staff.
 - (a) Assist the commander in assessing risk and in developing risk-reduction options when planning training.
 - (b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
 - (c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
 - (d) Assess safety performance during training.
 - (e) Evaluate safety performance during after-action reviews (AARs).
- (3) Subordinate leaders.
 - (a) Consistently apply effective RM concepts and methods to operations you lead.
 - (b) Report risk issues beyond your control or authority to your superiors.
- (4) Individual soldier.

- (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts; correct the situation when possible.
- (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
- (c) Take responsibility for personal safety.
- (d) Work as a team member (crew coordination).
- (e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. RM, in theory, is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5. The risk management process consists of the following five steps:

- (1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.
- (2) Assess hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of its causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army's standard risk assessment matrix is a tool for assessing hazards (Figure 1-2).
- (3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operation. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any residual risk decisions at the proper level of command.
- (4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), operation orders (OPORDs), standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.
- (5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards to include follow-up during- and after-action reviews. Develop the lessons learned.

e. Fratricide. The fratricide avoidance component of protection is closely related to the safety component. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment or facilities, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. RA and RM are the mechanisms with which incidences of fratricide can be controlled.

f. The primary causes of fratricide are--

- (1) Direct fire control plan failures. These failures occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.
- (2) Land navigation failures. These failures result when units stray out of the sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.
- (3) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots unable to distinguish thermal or optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited visibility conditions.
- (4) Inadequate control measures. Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.
- (5) Reporting communication failures. As locations and tactical situations change, units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports.
- (6) Weapons error. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives and hand grenades, and similar incidents.

- (3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.
- (4) Oversupervision of units.
- (5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.
- (6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.
- (7) Loss of initiative.
- (8) Disrupted operations.
- (9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental RM parallels safety RM and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental RM consists of the following steps:

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazard. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental RA matrix (Figure 1-3). The severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental RA matrix.

c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. Brief the chain of command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation's environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 list standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Conduct internal evaluations at all levels and ensure their implementation in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a headquarters two levels above the unit being evaluated. (See Chapter 6, External Evaluations.)

b. Failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed is a critical weakness in training. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Every training exercise provides the potential for evaluation feedback. Every evaluation is a training session. Leaders frequently do not evaluate continuously. To optimize training, you must ensure that trainers and leaders continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Emphasize direct on-the-spot evaluations during training. Correcting poor performance during individual training or during drills is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do

this with outside evaluators. The habit of leader evaluation at every level makes the difference. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during exercises (usually after the completion of a major event). This is a proven technique that allows you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

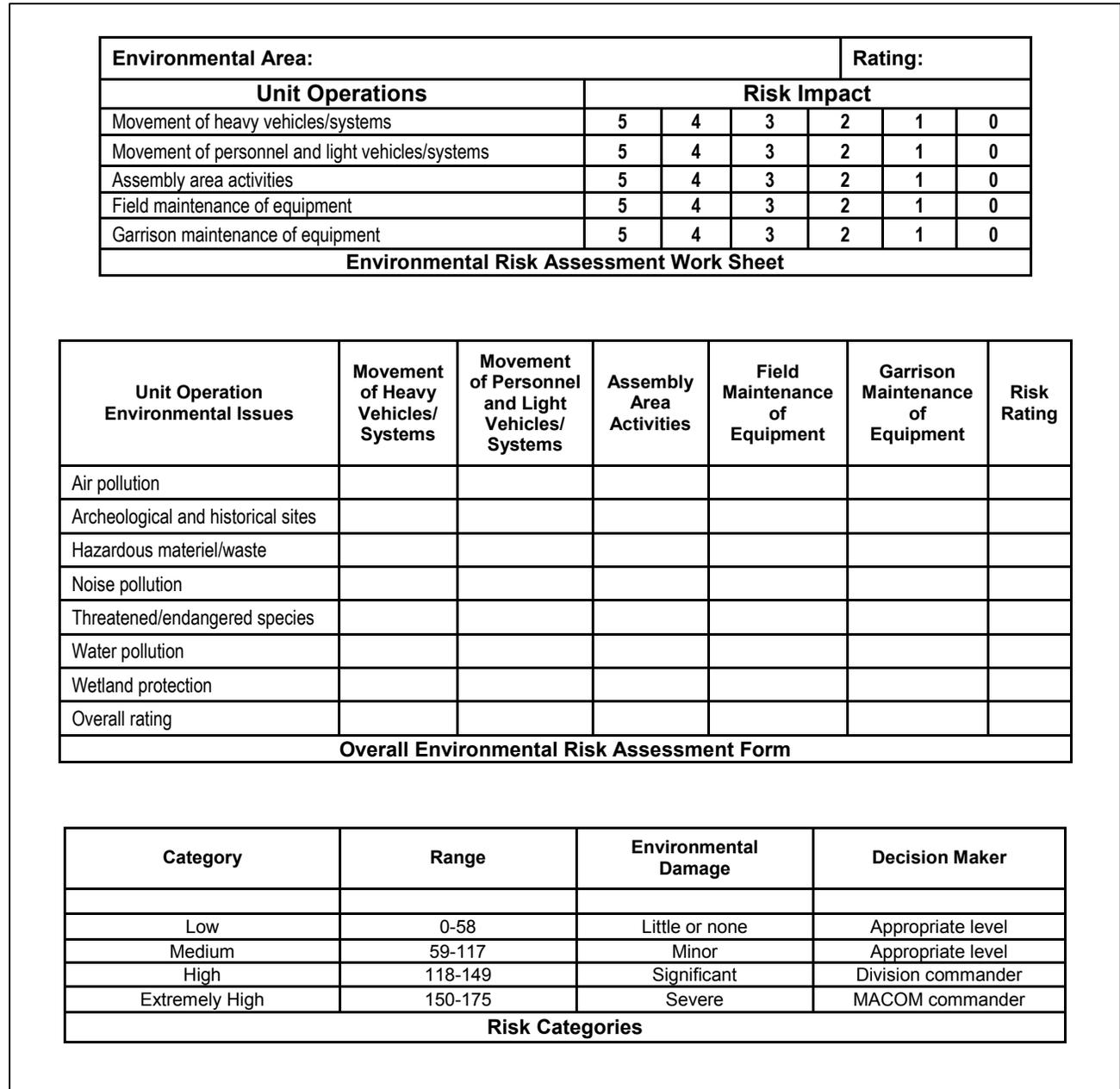


Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this document answers the training needs of units in the field. A questionnaire is provided at

the end of this MTP to make it easier to send recommendations and comments. Send comments to the address provided in the preface.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table
Mission Title
Conduct Biological Surveillance Operations Conduct LRBSDS Biological Detection Operations Document Biological Background Data Evacuate a Biological Sample Occupy/Displace from a Biosurveillance Site Provide Biological Surveillance/Detection Provide NBC Decontamination Provide NBC Reconnaissance Provide Smoke Operations Respond to a Biosurveillance Alert

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating systems (BOS), indicated by an "X" in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks	CONDUCT BIO-SURVEILLANCE	CONDUCT LRBSDS BIO-DETECTION	DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND	EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE
Develop Intelligence				
34-6-2010.03-0203 Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon)	X			
71-3-C232.03-1019 Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X			
03-2-3012 Plan and Initiate the Operations Security (OPSEC) Program				
34-5-C501.03-1015 Implement Information Security Procedures				
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver				
03-3-0005 Prepare the Unit for a Nontactical Move	X			
03-3-0006 Conduct a Nontactical Road March	X			
07-3-C227.03-1004 Perform a Tactical Road March	X			
55-2-C324.03-2102 Conduct a Convoy				
07-2-C331.03-5002 Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)				
Protect the Force				

Collective Tasks		CONDUCT BIO-SURVEILLANCE	CONDUCT LRBSDS BIO-DETECTION	DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND	EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE
03-2-3006	Secure and Defend the Unit's Position				
03-2-C312	Conduct Thorough Decontamination Operations	X			
03-3-0016	Employ Physical Security Measures	X		X	X
03-3-0018	Plan the Employment of a Biological Detection (BD) Platoon	X		X	X
03-3-C201	Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X			
03-3-C202	Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X			
03-3-C203	Respond to a Chemical Attack	X			
03-3-C205	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X			
03-3-C206	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X			
03-3-C208	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X			
03-3-C222	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X			
03-3-C223	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X			
03-3-C224	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X			
03-3-C226	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X			
03-4-0018	Prepare for a Biological Attack	X			
03-4-0019	Respond to a Biological Attack	X			
05-3-0210.03-1001	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X			
09-2-C337.03-1037	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)				
03-2-3008	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey				
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
03-2-7003	Conduct Biological Defense Planning	X	X		
03-3-0001	Plan and Coordinate Unit Deployment	X			
03-3-0002	Prepare for and Conduct Rail Deployment	X			

Collective Tasks		CONDUCT BIO-SURVEILLANCE	CONDUCT LRBSDS BIO-DETECTION	DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND	EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE
03-3-0003	Prepare for and Conduct Air Deployment	X			
03-3-0004	Prepare for and Conduct Sea Deployment	X			
03-3-0037	Perform Preventive-Medicine Measures	X		X	X
08-2-0003.03-00CT	Treat Casualties		X		
10-2-C319.03-1319	Receive Airdrop Resupply				
19-3-3106.03-1014	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X		
19-3-3105.03-2305	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Company)				
08-2-C316.03-00CT	Transport Casualties				
10-2-C318.03-1008	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	X			
03-2-3016	Provide Administrative Support				
10-2-C320.03-1009	Provide Company Supply Support				
43-2-C322.03-1016	Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	X			
03-3-3023	Draw Equipment from the Pre-Positioned Materiel Configured to Unit Sets (POMCUS) Stocks				
Exercise Command and Control					
03-2-7001	Plan Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System		X		
03-3-0007	Establish a Command Post	X			
03-3-0008	Issue an Operation Order (OPORD)	X		X	X
03-3-0009	Prepare for Operations	X		X	X
03-3-0013	Establish Wire Communications	X		X	X
71-3-C231.03-1031	Perform Risk Management Procedures				

Collective Tasks	CONDUCT BIO-SURVEILLANCE	CONDUCT LRBSDS BIO-DETECTION	DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND	EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE
11-2-C302.03-1010 Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net				
03-2-3010 Plan Thorough Decontamination Operations				
12-2-C338.03-1012 Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	X			
12-2-C321.03-1011 Maintain Company Strength				

Collective Tasks	OCCUPY/ DISPLACE FROM BIOSURVEILLANCE	PROVIDE BIO- SURVEILLANCE	PROVIDE NBC DECON	PROVIDE NBC RECON
Develop Intelligence				
34-6-2010.03-0203 Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon)				
71-3-C232.03-1019 Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)				
03-2-3012 Plan and Initiate the Operations Security (OPSEC) Program		X	X	X
34-5-C501.03-1015 Implement Information Security Procedures		X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver				
03-3-0005 Prepare the Unit for a Nontactical Move	X	X	X	X
03-3-0006 Conduct a Nontactical Road March	X	X	X	X
07-3-C227.03-1004 Perform a Tactical Road March		X	X	X
55-2-C324.03-2102 Conduct a Convoy		X		
07-2-C331.03-5002 Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)		X	X	X
Protect the Force				
03-2-3006 Secure and Defend the Unit's Position		X	X	X
03-2-C312 Conduct Thorough Decontamination Operations		X	X	X
03-3-0016 Employ Physical Security Measures	X	X	X	X
03-3-0018 Plan the Employment of a Biological Detection (BD) Platoon	X	X		
03-3-C201 Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions		X	X	X
03-3-C202 Prepare for a Chemical Attack		X	X	X
03-3-C203 Respond to a Chemical Attack		X	X	X
03-3-C205 Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike		X	X	X
03-3-C206 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack		X	X	X
03-3-C208 Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area		X	X	X
03-3-C222 Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack		X	X	X

Collective Tasks		OCCUPY/ DISPLACE FROM BIOSURVEILLANCE	PROVIDE BIO- SURVEILLANCE	PROVIDE NBC DECON	PROVIDE NBC RECON
03-3-C223	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack		X	X	X
03-3-C224	Conduct Operational Decontamination		X	X	X
03-3-C226	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area		X	X	X
03-4-0018	Prepare for a Biological Attack		X	X	X
03-4-0019	Respond to a Biological Attack		X	X	X
05-3-0210.03-1001	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment		X	X	X
09-2-C337.03-1037	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)		X	X	X
03-2-3008	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey		X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
03-2-7003	Conduct Biological Defense Planning				
03-3-0001	Plan and Coordinate Unit Deployment		X	X	X
03-3-0002	Prepare for and Conduct Rail Deployment		X	X	X
03-3-0003	Prepare for and Conduct Air Deployment		X	X	X
03-3-0004	Prepare for and Conduct Sea Deployment		X	X	X
03-3-0037	Perform Preventive-Medicine Measures	X	X	X	X
08-2-0003.03-00CT	Treat Casualties			X	X
10-2-C319.03-1319	Receive Airdrop Resupply			X	X
19-3-3106.03-1014	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		X	X	X
19-3-3105.03-2305	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Company)		X	X	X
08-2-C316.03-00CT	Transport Casualties		X	X	X
10-2-C318.03-1008	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations		X	X	X
03-2-3016	Provide Administrative Support		X	X	X
10-2-C320.03-1009	Provide Company Supply Support		X	X	X

Collective Tasks	OCCUPY/ DISPLACE FROM BIOSURVEILLANCE	PROVIDE BIO- SURVEILLANCE	PROVIDE NBC DECON	PROVIDE NBC RECON
43-2-C322.03-1016 Perform Unit-Level Maintenance		X	X	X
03-3-3023 Draw Equipment from the Pre-Positioned Materiel Configured to Unit Sets (POMCUS) Stocks		X	X	X
Exercise Command and Control				
03-2-7001 Plan Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System		X		
03-3-0007 Establish a Command Post	X	X	X	X
03-3-0008 Issue an Operation Order (OPORD)	X	X	X	X
03-3-0009 Prepare for Operations	X	X	X	X
03-3-0013 Establish Wire Communications	X	X	X	X
71-3-C231.03-1031 Perform Risk Management Procedures		X		
11-2-C302.03-1010 Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net		X	X	X
03-2-3010 Plan Thorough Decontamination Operations			X	
12-2-C338.03-1012 Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability		X	X	X
12-2-C321.03-1011 Maintain Company Strength		X	X	X

Collective Tasks	PROVIDE SMOKE OPERATIONS	RESPOND TO A BIOSURVEILLANCE ALERT
Develop Intelligence		
34-6-2010.03-0203 Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon)		
71-3-C232.03-1019 Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)		
03-2-3012 Plan and Initiate the Operations Security (OPSEC) Program	X	
34-5-C501.03-1015 Implement Information Security Procedures	X	
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver		
03-3-0005 Prepare the Unit for a Nontactical Move	X	
03-3-0006 Conduct a Nontactical Road March	X	
07-3-C227.03-1004 Perform a Tactical Road March	X	
55-2-C324.03-2102 Conduct a Convoy		
07-2-C331.03-5002 Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	
Protect the Force		
03-2-3006 Secure and Defend the Unit's Position	X	
03-2-C312 Conduct Thorough Decontamination Operations	X	
03-3-0016 Employ Physical Security Measures	X	X
03-3-0018 Plan the Employment of a Biological Detection (BD) Platoon		X
03-3-C201 Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	
03-3-C202 Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X	
03-3-C203 Respond to a Chemical Attack	X	
03-3-C205 Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	
03-3-C206 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X	
03-3-C208 Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	
03-3-C222 Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	

Collective Tasks		PROVIDE SMOKE OPERATIONS	RESPOND TO A BIOSURVEILLANCE ALERT
03-3-C223	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	
03-3-C224	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	
03-3-C226	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	
03-4-0018	Prepare for a Biological Attack	X	
03-4-0019	Respond to a Biological Attack	X	
05-3-0210.03-1001	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	
09-2-C337.03-1037	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	
03-2-3008	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X	
Perform CSS and Sustainment			
03-2-7003	Conduct Biological Defense Planning		
03-3-0001	Plan and Coordinate Unit Deployment	X	
03-3-0002	Prepare for and Conduct Rail Deployment	X	
03-3-0003	Prepare for and Conduct Air Deployment	X	
03-3-0004	Prepare for and Conduct Sea Deployment	X	
03-3-0037	Perform Preventive-Medicine Measures	X	X
08-2-0003.03-00CT	Treat Casualties	X	
10-2-C319.03-1319	Receive Airdrop Resupply	X	
19-3-3106.03-1014	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	
19-3-3105.03-2305	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Company)	X	
08-2-C316.03-00CT	Transport Casualties	X	
10-2-C318.03-1008	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	X	
03-2-3016	Provide Administrative Support	X	
10-2-C320.03-1009	Provide Company Supply Support	X	

Collective Tasks		PROVIDE SMOKE OPERATIONS	RESPOND TO A BIOSURVEILLANCE ALERT
43-2-C322.03-1016	Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	X	
03-3-3023	Draw Equipment from the Pre-Positioned Materiel Configured to Unit Sets (POMCUS) Stocks	X	
Exercise Command and Control			
03-2-7001	Plan Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System		
03-3-0007	Establish a Command Post	X	X
03-3-0008	Issue an Operation Order (OPORD)	X	X
03-3-0009	Prepare for Operations	X	X
03-3-0013	Establish Wire Communications	X	X
71-3-C231.03-1031	Perform Risk Management Procedures		
11-2-C302.03-1010	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	
03-2-3010	Plan Thorough Decontamination Operations		
12-2-C338.03-1012	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	X	
12-2-C321.03-1011	Maintain Company Strength	X	

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions

CHAPTER 3

Mission Outlines / Training Plans

3-1. General. Mission outlines are designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for wartime missions. The mission outlines illustrate the relationship between the missions and their supporting tasks. FMs 25-100 and 25-101 provide detailed information on training management. They should be used with this MTP to develop training plans.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how lower-level task training contributes to the ability of the unit to perform its critical wartime mission. Table 3-1 lists sample missions contained in this MTP. Together with the training matrixes listed below, this outline provides the commander with a visual outline of his unit's mission in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training. These exercises are fully defined in Chapter 4.

Table 3-1. Sample Mission Outline

Exercise	Title
FTX 1	Provide Smoke Support to a Unit
FTX 2	Provide Smoke and Decontamination Support
FTX 3	Plan and Support Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Reconnaissance
FTX 4	Provide Decontamination Operations
FTX 5	Plan and Support Smoke, Decontamination, and Nuclear, Biological and Chemical Reconnaissance Operations
STX A	Perform a Tactical Road March
STX B	Provide a Smoke Screen to a Fixed Site
STX C	Provide Thorough Decontamination
STX D	Conceal Movement
STX E	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) and Defend the Unit's Perimeter
STX F	Provide Concealment for a Breaching Operation
STX G	Provide Operational Decontamination
STX H	Provide Concealment for a River Operation
STX I	Plan and Support a Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance
STX J	Plan and Support a Radiological Reconnaissance

3-3. Training Matrix Purpose. Training matrixes help in the planning of training. They show the relationship between the collective tasks through the FTX. The collective tasks are incorporated into the FTX and cross-walked into the STXs.

a. Table 3-2 identifies STXs that support the FTXs in this MTP.

Table 3-2. Sample STX-to-FTX Matrix

FTX	Mission Outline	Supporting STX									
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	Provide Smoke Support to a Unit	X	X		X	X	X		X		
2	Provide Smoke and Decontamination Support	X	X	X	X	X	X		X		
3	Plan and Support NBC Reconnaissance	X				X				X	X
4	Provide Decontamination Operations	X		X		X		X			
5	Plan and Support Smoke, Decontamination, and NBC Reconnaissance Operations	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

b. Table 3-3 identifies collective tasks that unit personnel must perform to standard to be proficient in the STX. Use this matrix to plan individual and collective training to support unit training. To use this matrix, choose the STX you wish to train and look down the column to find the supporting collective tasks.

Determine which of the collective tasks you wish to concentrate on based on your unit's proficiency. Note that each collective task has an assigned number. This number is used to identify the task and to identify the T&EO in Chapter 5.

Table 3-3. Collective-Task-to-STX Training Matrix

Task Number	Task Title	STX									
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
34-6-2010.03-0203	Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
71-3-C232.03-1019	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		
03-2-3012	Plan and Initiate the OPSEC Program					X				X	
34-5-C501.03-1015	Implement Information Security Procedures	X				X					
03-3-0005	Prepare the Unit for a Nontactical Move	X									
03-3-0006	Conduct a Nontactical Road March	X									
07-3-C227.03-1004	Perform a Tactical Road March		X		X	X	X		X	X	X
55-2-C324.03-2102	Conduct a Convoy	X	X		X	X	X		X	X	X
07-2-C331.03-5002	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X		X	X	X				
03-2-3006	Secure and Defend the Unit's Position	X	X		X	X	X		X	X	X
03-2-C312	Conduct Thorough Decontamination Operations		X	X				X			
03-3-0016	Employ Physical Security Measures					X					
03-3-0018	Plan Employment of a Biological Detection Platoon	X		X		X		X		X	
03-3-C201	Prepare for Operations under NBC Conditions	X		X				X		X	X
03-3-C202	Prepare for a Chemical Attack			X				X		X	X
03-3-C203	Respond to a Chemical Attack			X				X		X	X
03-3-C205	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike					X					X
03-3-C206	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack					X					X
03-3-C208	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X						X			X
03-3-C209	React to Smoke Operations		X			X	X		X		
03-3-C222	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack					X					X
03-3-C223	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack					X					X
03-3-C224	Conduct Operational Decontamination							X			
03-3-C226	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X						X		X	
03-4-0018	Prepare for a Biological Attack					X				X	
03-4-0019	Respond to a Biological Attack					X				X	
05-3-0210.03-1001	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment				X						
09-2-C337.03-1037	React to Unexploded Ordnance				X						
03-2-3008	Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X								X	X
03-2-7003	Conduct Biological Defense Planning									X	
03-3-0001	Plan and Coordinate Unit Deployment	X	X		X		X		X	X	X
03-3-0002	Prepare for and Conduct Rail Deployment										
03-3-0003	Prepare for and Conduct Air Deployment										
03-3-0004	Prepare for and Conduct Sea Deployment										
03-3-0037	Perform Preventive-Medicine Measures									X	
08-2-0003.03-00CT	Treat Casualties	X		X		X		X			
10-2-C319.03-1319	Receive Airdrop Resupply			X		X					
19-3-3106.03-1014	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)					X					
19-3-3105.03-2305	Process Captured Documents and Equipment (CO)					X					
08-2-C316.03-00CT	Transport Casualties					X					
10-2-C318.03-1008	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations					X					
03-2-3016	Provide Administrative Support					X					
10-2-C320.03-1009	Provide Company Supply Support					X					
43-2-C322.03-1016	Perform Unit Level Maintenance	X								X	X
03-3-3023	Draw Equipment from Pre-Positioning of Material Configured to Unit Sets (POMCUS) Stocks										
03-2-7001	Plan Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff									X	

	Detection System (LRBSDL)										
03-3-0007	Establish a Command Post (CP)					X					
03-3-0008	Issue an Operation Order (OPORD)	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X
03-3-0009	Prepare for Operations								X	X	X

3-5. Time Constraints. Some units may have less time to train the above missions to standard. Normally, these units are found in the RC. Because of the narrow window in training, reserve units may need to modify the number of collective tasks found in the STXs during a specified FTX.

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. Introduction. The trainer uses training exercises to train and practice collective tasks. This MTP contains FTXs and STXs listed in Table 4-1. These exercises are designed to assist you in developing, sustaining, and evaluating your unit's mission proficiency.

Table 4-1. List of Training Exercises

Exercise	Title	Page
FTX 1	Provide Smoke Support to a Unit	4-2
FTX 2	Provide Smoke and Decontamination Support	4-8
FTX 3	Plan and Support an NBC Reconnaissance	4-14
FTX 4	Provide Decontamination Operations	4-21
FTX 5	Plan and Support Smoke, Decontamination, and NBC Reconnaissance Operations	4-29
STX A	Perform a Tactical Road March	4-36
STX B	Provide a Smoke Screen to a Fixed Site	4-42
STX C	Provide Thorough Decontamination	4-47
STX D	Conceal Movement	4-52
STX E	Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter	4-57
STX F	Provide Concealment for a Breaching Operation	4-64
STX G	Provide Operational Decontamination	4-69
STX H	Provide Concealment for a River Operation	4-73
STX I	Plan and Support a Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance	4-78
STX J	Plan and Support a Radiological Reconnaissance	4-82

4-2. Field Training Exercises. An FTX provides a logical sequence for performance of tasks previously trained in the STXs and the mission orientation for unit training. The FTXs contained in this MTP are specifically designed to train a chemical company in performing its missions.

4-3. Situational Training Exercises. An STX is a short scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical training exercise. It provides a vehicle to train a group of closely related collective tasks. It gives information for training smaller component tasks within a specific mission. The STX--

- a. Provides repetitive training on bite-size chunks of missions.
- b. Allows training to zero in on training weaknesses.
- c. Allows a unit or element to practice selected critical parts of a mission before practicing the entire mission.
- d. Saves critical time by providing a majority of the information required or needed to develop a training vehicle.

FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE 1
PROVIDE SMOKE SUPPORT TO A UNIT

1. Objective. This sample FTX is designed to provide training and formal evaluation of the company's performance and proficiency in planning, conducting, and supervising smoke support.
2. Interface. The following STXs support this FTX:
 - a. STX A, Perform a Tactical Road March.
 - b. STX B, Provide a Smoke Screen to a Fixed Site.
 - c. STX D, Conceal Movement.
 - d. STX E, Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter.
 - e. STX F, Provide Concealment for a Breaching Operation.
 - f. STX H, Provide Concealment for a River Operation.
3. Training. This FTX is executed in a field environment under various conditions.
 - a. Before the unit conducts this FTX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks of each STX. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--
 - (1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.
 - (2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.
 - (3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.
 - (4) Command post exercises (CPXs) conducted in garrison.
 - (5) Command field exercises (CFXs) conducted in a field environment.
 - (6) Tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs).
 - (7) Communications exercises (COMEXs).
 - (8) Simulations and games.
 - b. Establish an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in--
 - (1) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness programs.
 - (2) Leader and individual confidence courses.
 - (3) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
 - (4) Awareness of the unit's heritage.

c. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this FTX.

- (1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercises.
- (2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.
- (3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the--
 - (a) Effects of weather and terrain on smoke.
 - (b) Need to maintain local security.
 - (c) Selection of smoke control points that allow for continual observation of the selected area.
 - (d) Resupply considerations (off-line versus on-line).
- (4) Become familiar with planning and controlling smoke operations (FM 3-50).
- (5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.
- (6) The planning process for the mission begins with the receipt of a fragmentary order (FRAGO). You should conduct an AAR after each STX, each reorganization, and on completion of the mission. If necessary, repeat portions of the exercise until you are satisfied with the unit's performance.
- (7) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

d. Training enhancers.

- (1) To conduct this exercise, use the FRAGO given in the special situation.
- (2) The OPFOR control must keep ground probe directed against the chemical company, especially if the remainder of the perimeter is notional.
- (3) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this FTX under--
 - (a) Varied environmental conditions, such as summer or winter months and in desert, jungle, or mountainous areas.
 - (b) Day and/or night operations.
 - (c) Varied NBC conditions.
- (4) This training exercise is conducted under conventional and/or NBC conditions.
- (5) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.
- (6) Use the MILES and other simulators to realistically gage the effects of the OPFOR and how well the company defends itself.
- (7) Prepare a plan based on METT-TC factors.

- (a) Mission. How far must we move, and how long is the smoke to last?
 - (b) Enemy. What is the threat? How likely is an attack by ground, air, or NBC?
 - (c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, trafficability, meteorological data, and distance for fog-oil resupply?
 - (d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment?
 - (e) Time. When is the mission scheduled to start?
 - (f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?
- (8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss actions on contact and what to do for air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.
- (9) Be prepared to receive other missions.
- (10) Under conventional conditions delete the NBC events from the STXs. Use conventional conditions to introduce this FTX. Next, incorporate a threat of NBC or NBC conditions into subsequent iterations. This FTX can run as an active NBC environment or any combination of environments. Each STX designed as part of this FTX was selected to train specific tasks.
- (11) Use the collective tasks in Chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

- a. The company is allocated fuel supply support to accomplish several long-term missions.
- b. Exercising units accomplish the following operations:
 - (1) Develop a plan to accomplish the mission within the allocated time.
 - (2) Conduct a tactical movement.
 - (3) Establish and operate as part of a base defense organization.
 - (4) Maintain security throughout.
 - (5) Report information of intelligence value.
 - (6) Maintain smoke coverage of the selected area.
 - (7) Prepare to assume a new mission on order.
- c. Weapons of mass destruction have been used throughout the theater of operation.

5. Special Situation.

- a. The company has received a FRAGO from higher HQ (Figure 4-1).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
FRAGO Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
2. MISSION. ___ Chemical Company conducts smoke operations NLT DDTTTTMMYY along Axis Blue to provide concealment in order to protect ___ Brigade's movement.	
3. EXECUTION.	
a. Concept of operations.	
b. Tasks to subordinate units.	
(1) Provide smoke support to the ___ Brigade.	
(2) Effect coordination and link up with them not later than DDTTTTMMYY. At that time you will receive the unit's mission from the Assistant Chief of Staff (Operations and Plans) (G3) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).	
c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.	
(1) Alert the company and effect coordination with the brigade.	
(2) After the company has linked up with the brigade, report to the brigade's S3 and receive the following briefing:	
"For the last three days the brigade was tasked as the division reserve. The brigade just received the mission of conducting the division counterattack along AXIS BLUE. The brigade is to move from our present location to an AA bounded by grid coordinates _____ and _____ starting DDTTTTMMYY. The brigade needs the chemical company to provide concealment as it moves along this route to the AA. Once the maneuver battalions have relocated to the forward AA, provide concealment for the brigade trains as they establish positions in the support area located at grid coordinates _____. When the brigade support area has been repositioned, the chemical company needs to screen a river crossing at this grid _____ location. The unit also needs to provide a deception screen north of the area of operations (AO) (see Annex H of the OPORD for the deception plan details). After the brigade crosses the river, we anticipate encountering a number of obstacles on the other side. Plan to support the engineers with a smoke screen as they reach these obstacles.	
"The enemy situation has changed very little during the last 48 hours. The airborne special-operations units that landed in the division have linked up with local partisan units, so prepare for ambushes, probing attacks, and general harassment of the operations. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) estimates that most enemy operations will consist of squad- or platoon-sized forces.	

Figure 4-1. Example FRAGO for FTX 1

“Troop safety information: Do not exceed a negligible risk to unwarned, unprotected personnel with the operational exposure guidance (OEG) at 50 cGy total dose initially. Because of the chemical/biological threat, the brigade will remain at MOPP1 initially. The air defense condition is weapons tight; you can engage only aircraft that are positively identified as hostile.

“The brigade HQ location is initially grid coordinate _____. Any questions?”

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. Signal operations instructions (SOI) index ___ is in effect.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-1. Example FRAGO for FTX 1 (continued)

b. Table 4-2 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this FTX.

Table 4-2. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for FTX 1

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Alert and Prepare to Move	2
2	Perform a Tactical Road March	2
3	Cross a Radiological Contaminated Area	Included in Event 2
4	React to Indirect Fire	Included in Event 2
5	Conceal Movement	3
6	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
7	React to Ambush	Included in Event 6
8	Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter	4
9	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
10	Provide a Smoke Screen to a Fixed Site	6
11	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
12	React to Chemical Agent Attack (Persistent Agent)	Included in Event 11
13	Perform a Operational Decontamination	1
14	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
15	Provide Concealment for a River Operation	4
16	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
17	Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter	8
18	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Attack	Included in Event 17
19	Respond to Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	Included in Event 17
20	Respond to Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	Included in Event 17
21	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
22	Provide Concealment for a Breaching Operation	4
23	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	2
Total Time		42 Hours
<p>NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p>		

6. Support Requirement.

- a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers (O/C). The commander trains and can evaluate this exercise. If possible, an evaluator is with each section and at least one other O/C is required with the OPFOR.
- b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR for this FTX requires at least platoon strength with two soldiers dressed as civilians.
- c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment consist of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the unit. Additionally, one vehicle with a radio and an operator is required for controlling and monitoring operations and one or more vehicles are required for the OPFOR.
- d. Maneuver area. The area should permit a road march of 15 kilometers and the production of large-area smoke.
- e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-3.

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 1

Ammunition	Basic Load
Cartridge, blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Body, practice hand grenade	See STRAC Manual
Fuze, hand grenade M228	See STRAC Manual
Smoke hand grenade 1,2	See STRAC Manual
Mine, chemical agent	See STRAC Manual
Smoke pot, floating type	2 per generator
Smoke pot, ground type	2 per generator
Signal, illumination, cluster 1,3	See STRAC Manual
Flare, surface, trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, booby trap 4	See STRAC Manual
Training Aids and Devices	
Interference generator SG886T/UR, AN/TLQ17, AN/PRR8, or their replacement. M9 simulator, projectile, airburst, liquid (SPAL). Polyethylene glycol (PEG-200) chemical simulant. Training aid, skin decontaminating, M58A1. M256 simulator, detector tickets, chemical agent: training (Threat Reaction Analysis Indicator System [TRAINS]). Radio-controlled miniature target (RCMT).	
NOTES:	
1 Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors needed for control.	
2 Smoke hand grenade colors: Hexachloroethane (HC) green, yellow, red, and violet.	
3 Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.	
4 Simulator, booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.	

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE 2

PROVIDE SMOKE AND DECONTAMINATION SUPPORT

1. Objective. This sample FTX is designed to provide training and formal evaluation of the company's performance and proficiency in planning, conducting, and supervising decontamination and smoke support.
2. Interface. The following STXs support this FTX:
 - a. STX A, Perform a Tactical Road March.
 - b. STX B, Provide a Smoke Screen to a Fixed Site.
 - c. STX C, Provide Thorough Decontamination.
 - d. STX D, Conceal Movement.
 - e. STX E, Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter.
 - f. STX F, Provide Concealment for a Breaching Operation.
 - g. STX H, Provide Concealment for a River Operation.
3. Training. This FTX is executed in a field environment under various conditions.
 - a. Before the unit conducts this FTX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks of each STX. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--
 - (1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.
 - (2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.
 - (3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.
 - (4) CPXs conducted in garrison.
 - (5) CFXs conducted in a field environment.
 - (6) TEWTs.
 - (7) COMEXs.
 - (8) Simulations and games.
 - b. Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:
 - (1) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness programs.
 - (2) Leader and individual confidence courses.

- (3) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
- (4) Awareness of the unit's heritage.

c. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this FTX.

- (1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercises.
- (2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.
- (3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the--
 - (a) Effects of weather and terrain on decontamination and smoke.
 - (b) Need for maintaining local security.
 - (c) Selection of smoke control points that allow for continual observation of the selected area.
 - (d) Coordination with the fire support officer (FSO) to integrate indirect fire for the smoke plan.
 - (e) Selection of decontamination sites that provide cover and concealment and a passable road network.
 - (f) Coordination for water supply, ADA, MP, EN, and medical support.
 - (g) Forecasting and planning of decontamination resources.
 - (h) Site layout and operations.
 - (i) Control of runoff and vapor hazards.
- (4) Become familiar with planning and controlling decontamination and smoke operations (FM 3-5 and FM 3-50).
- (5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.
- (6) The planning process for the mission begins with the receipt of a FRAGO. You should conduct an AAR after each STX, each reorganization, and on completion of the mission. If necessary, repeat portions of the exercise until you are satisfied with the unit's performance.
- (7) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

d. Training enhancers.

- (1) To conduct this exercise, use the FRAGO given in the special situation.
- (2) The OPFOR control must keep ground probe directed against the chemical company, especially if the remainder of the perimeter is notional.
- (3) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this FTX under--
 - (a) Varied environmental conditions, such as summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.

- (b) Day and/or night operations.
- (c) Varied NBC conditions.
- (4) This training exercise is conducted under conventional and/or NBC conditions.
- (5) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, they must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.
- (6) Use the MILES and other simulators to realistically gage the effects of the OPFOR and how well the company defends itself.
- (7) Prepare a plan based on METT-TC factors.
 - (a) Mission. How far must we move, and how long is the smoke to last? Does fire support (FS) plans include projected smoke? What type of unit is the decontamination required for?
 - (b) Enemy. What is the threat?
 - (c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, trafficability, meteorological data, and distance for fog oil resupply? Does the decontamination site selected have water points and good drainage?
 - (d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment?
 - (e) Time. When is the mission scheduled to start?
 - (f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?
- (8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact and what to do during air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.
- (9) Be prepared to receive other missions.
- (10) Under conventional conditions, delete the NBC events from the STXs. Use conventional conditions to introduce this FTX. Next, incorporate a threat of NBC or NBC conditions into subsequent iterations. This FTX can run as an active NBC environment or any combination of environments. Each STX designed as part of this FTX was selected to train specific tasks.
- (11) Use the collective tasks in chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

- a. The company is allocated sufficient resources to accomplish several long-term smoke and decontamination missions.
- b. Exercising units accomplish the following operations:
 - (1) Develop a plan to accomplish the mission within the allocated time.
 - (2) Conduct a tactical movement.
 - (3) Establish and operate as part of a base defense organization.

- (4) Maintain security throughout.
 - (5) Report information of intelligence value.
 - (6) Plan, coordinate, supervise, and support decontamination missions.
 - (7) Plan, conduct, and maintain smoke coverage of the selected area.
 - (8) Prepare to assume a new mission on order.
- c. Weapons of mass destruction have been used throughout the theater of operation.
5. Special Situation.
- a. The unit just received a warning order from the corps chemical officer (Figure 4-2).

WARNING ORDER	
<p>WARNING ORDER Number: _____</p> <p>References:</p> <p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>2. MISSION. ___ Chemical Company conducts smoke operations for 2nd BCT NLT DDTTTTMMYY vicinity grid ___ to screen and protect the brigade's movement. On order, conduct decontamination operations to reduce and eliminate the spread of contamination.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Concept of operations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Tasks to subordinate units.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Provide smoke supporting the 20th ID, which is conducting offensive operations in the corps sector. Prepare to move no later than DDTTTT hours. Additional details on the mission will be provided at DDTTTT hours at the corps tactical CP.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Alert the unit and then report to the corps tactical CP, where the corps chemical officer gives the following briefing:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">“The 20th ID was hit this morning by a persistent nerve agent attack. Its 2nd Brigade has already suffered heavy casualties from its screening operation. As a result of the chemical attack, it appears the 2nd Brigade will pull back for reconstitution. The division requested smoke and decontamination support from the corps. Your company will provide that support. Your unit will move to an AA located vicinity of grid _____. Report to the division chemical officer located at the division main CP located at grid _____ no later than DDTTTT hours for a briefing.”</p>	<p>Copy ___ of ___ copies</p> <p>Issuing headquarters</p> <p>Place of issue</p> <p>Date-time group of signature</p> <p>Message reference number</p>

Figure 4-2. Sample Warning Order for FTX 2

(3) Plan and move the company as directed in STX A to the division area. The company occupies a position within the perimeter. Upon arrival, report to the supported unit's operations and receive a request to assist in establishing a portion of the unit's perimeter defense.

(4) The planning process for the remainder of the exercise begins with the following briefing from the division chemical officer:

"The 2nd Brigade is currently located at grid _____. We plan to move the brigade along this route to the brigade support area located at grid _____. We want the chemical company to provide a smoke screen to conceal their movement along that route. You are to select and establish a thorough decontamination site and then perform a thorough decontamination on the 2nd Brigade to include the equipment used to transport the brigade. Conceal this operation with smoke and also conduct a deception screen in our sector. When this operation is completed, your company has an ongoing mission to provide operational decontamination support for the division."

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-2. Sample Warning Order for FTX 2 (continued)

b. Table 4-4 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this FTX.

Table 4-4. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for FTX 2

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Alert and Prepare to Move	2
2	Occupy an AA	1
3	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
4	Cross a Radiological Contaminated Area	Included in Event 3
5	Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter	4
6	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
7	Conceal Movement	3
8	Provide Concealment for a River Operation	Included in Event 7
9	Prepare for Thorough Decontamination	4
10	Conduct a Site Selection	1
11	Establish a Decontamination Site	2
12	Operate a Thorough Decontamination Site	20
13	Provide a Smoke Screen to a Fixed Site (Decon Site)	Included in Event 12
14	Provide a Smoke Screen for Deception	Included in Event 12
15	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
16	Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter	6
17	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
18	Perform an Operational Decontamination	4
19	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	2
Total Time:		53 Hours
<p>NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p>		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander trains and can evaluate this exercise. If possible, an O/C is with each section and at least one other O/C is required with the OPFOR.

b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR for this FTX requires at least a platoon strength with four soldiers dressed as civilians.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment consist of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit. Additionally, one vehicle with a radio and an operator is also required for controlling and monitoring operations, and one or more vehicles are required for the OPFOR.

d. Maneuver area. The area should permit a road march of 15 kilometers and the production of large area smoke. The area should also contain two sites suitable for setting up smoke lines and one site for thorough decontamination.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-5.

Table 4-5. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 2

Ammunition	Basic Load
Cartridge, blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Body, practice hand grenade	See STRAC Manual
Fuze, hand grenade M228	See STRAC Manual
Smoke hand grenade ^{1, 2}	See STRAC Manual
Mine, chemical agent	See STRAC Manual
Smoke pot, floating type	2 per generator
Smoke pot, ground type	2 per generator
Signal, illumination, cluster ^{1, 3}	See STRAC Manual
Flare, surface, trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, booby trap ⁴	See STRAC Manual
Training Aids and Devices	
Interference generator SG886T/UR, AN/TLQ17, AN/PRR8, or their replacement. AN/TDQ-T1 large area radiac trainer.	
NOTES	
¹ Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors needed for control.	
² Smoke hand grenade colors: HC green, yellow, red, and violet.	
³ Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.	
⁴ Simulator, booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.	

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE 3

PLAN AND SUPPORT AN NBC RECONNAISSANCE

1. Objective. This sample FTX is designed to provide training and formal evaluation of the company's performance and proficiency in planning, supporting, and supervising an NBC reconnaissance.
2. Interface. The following STXs support this FTX:
 - a. STX A, Perform a Tactical Road March.
 - b. STX E, Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter.
 - c. STX I, Plan and Support a Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance.
 - d. STX J, Plan and Support a Radiological Reconnaissance.
3. Training. This FTX is executed in a field environment under various conditions.
 - a. Before the unit conducts this FTX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks of each STX. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--
 - (1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.
 - (2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.
 - (3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.
 - (4) CPXs conducted in garrison.
 - (5) CFXs conducted in a field environment.
 - (6) TEWTs.
 - (7) COMEXs
 - (8) Simulations and games.
 - b. Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in--
 - (1) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness programs.
 - (2) Leader and individual confidence courses.
 - (3) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
 - (4) Awareness of the unit's heritage.
 - c. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this FTX.

- (1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercises.
 - (2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.
 - (3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the following points:
 - (a) The effects of weather and terrain on detecting, identifying, and sampling NBC hazards.
 - (b) What do we want the NBC reconnaissance to do?
 - (c) Where do we want the NBC recon?
 - (d) When do we perform the NBC recon?
 - (e) Why are we performing the recon?
 - (f) Security--who, what, where, when, and how?
 - (g) Actions to take on contact with hostile/enemy forces.
 - (h) Coordination of passage of lines and lateral limits.
 - (i) Chain of custody requirements for samples.
 - (j) Coordination for fire support.
 - (k) Coordination for resupply.
 - (4) Become familiar with planning and controlling NBC reconnaissance (FM 3-19).
 - (5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.
 - (6) The planning process for the mission begins with the receipt of a FRAGO. You should conduct an AAR after each STX, each reorganization, and on completion of the mission. If necessary, repeat portions of the exercise until you are satisfied with the unit's performance.
 - (7) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.
- d. Training enhancers.
- (1) To conduct this exercise, use the FRAGO given in the special situation.
 - (2) The OPFOR control must keep ground probe directed against the chemical company, especially if the remainder of the perimeter is notional.
 - (3) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and the key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this FTX under--
 - (a) Varied environmental conditions, such as summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.
 - (b) Day and/or night operations.
 - (c) Varied NBC conditions.
 - (4) The training exercise is conducted under conventional and/or NBC conditions.

(5) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, they must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(6) Use the MILES and other simulators to realistically gage the effects of the OPFOR and how well the company defends itself.

(7) Prepare a plan based on METT-TC factors.

(a) Mission. Is the mission a zone, area, or route reconnaissance? What assets are required to perform the mission?

(b) Enemy. Information on the nuclear threat is obtained from intelligence estimates. This information may increase or decrease the time required to complete the mission based on the situation.

(c) Terrain and weather. Terrain may dictate which reconnaissance technique is used, either mounted or dismounted. Open, trafficable areas lend themselves to mounted operations, while urban, jungle, or otherwise restricted terrain is better handled dismounted for reconnaissance.

(d) Troops and equipment. Reconnaissance assets available will influence the number of vehicles (Fox, M113, or high-mobility, multipurpose, wheeled vehicle [HMMWV]) or teams used on a particular mission. Other missions may have assets tied up already, so mission planners will determine whether available assets can accomplish the mission.

(e) Time. The time required to complete the mission may dictate the size of the area that requires reconnoitering, or it may restrict the number of points at which readings and samples are taken.

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact and what to do during air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.

(9) Be prepared to receive other missions.

(10) Under conventional conditions delete the NBC events from the STXs. Use conventional conditions to introduce this FTX. Next incorporate a threat of NBC or NBC conditions into subsequent iterations. This FTX can run as an active NBC environment or any combination of environments. Each STX designed as part of this FTX was selected to train specific tasks.

(11) Use the collective tasks in chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The 10th US Corps is engaged with hostile forces. ____ Chemical Company is to provide NBC reconnaissance support to the ____ Division in the 10th US Corps area. The objective is to assist the field commander in seeing the battlefield for current and future operations to facilitate freedom of maneuver.

b. Exercising units accomplish the following operations:

(1) Develop a plan to accomplish the mission within the allocated time.

(2) Conduct a tactical movement.

- (3) Analyze the mission and tasks, check equipment, and prepare for operations.
 - (4) Report all information of intelligence value.
 - (5) Ensure that all members are briefed on the mission.
 - (6) Conduct NBC reconnaissance missions and take appropriate protective measures to reduce exposure.
 - (7) Establish and maintain communications with the supported unit or the NBCC.
 - (8) Mark contaminated areas correctly.
 - (9) Move tactically to the predesignated decontamination site (if required).
 - (10) Move to the designated AA for debriefing.
 - (11) Prepare to assume a new mission on order.
- c. Weapons of mass destruction have been used throughout the theater of operation.

5. Special Situation.

- a. The unit has just received a FRAGO (Figure 4-3).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER	
<p>FRAGO Number: _____</p> <p>References:</p> <p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>2. MISSION. __ Chemical Company conducts NBC reconnaissance operations to support the Corps' three divisions NLT <u>DTG</u> at designated locations in order to retain freedom of maneuver.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Concept of operations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Tasks to subordinate units.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) One platoon is to report to each division's tactical CP no later than DDTTTT hours. Report to the corps tactical CP at DDTTTT hours for additional guidance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Alert the unit and then report to the corps tactical CP, where the corps chemical officer will give you the following briefing:</p>	<p>Copy ___ of ___ copies</p> <p>Issuing headquarters</p> <p>Place of issue</p> <p>Date-time group of signature</p> <p>Message reference number</p>

Figure 4-3. Sample FRAGO for FTX 3

“The situation has changed very little. Infiltration units that landed in the corps rear area have linked up with local partisan units, so prepare for ambushes, probing attacks, and general harassment of your operations. The G2 estimates that most operations will be of squad or platoon size. Attacks with weapons of mass destruction have occurred throughout the theater of operations.

“The 10th US Corps is conducting offensive operations in zone with 52nd ID (Mech) and 54th ID (Mech) forward and 23rd AD in reserve. The unit's mission is to support each division with NBC reconnaissance assets. Look at the operations map for the location of the division's tactical CP.”

(2) Plan the operation and brief platoon leaders. On arrival at division CPs, platoon leaders report to the division chemical officer for the following briefing:

“Here is the general situation. Intelligence reports indicate that the OPFOR may use large amounts of chemical/biological agents in the division sector. The tactical situation may become unstable to friendly operations if chemical weapons are employed. In response to the situation, your NBC reconnaissance platoon is tasked to provide NBC reconnaissance to the maneuver brigades. Locate your platoon initially in AA _____ vicinity grid _____. Expect on receiving orders to support the maneuver brigades within the next few hours. Prepare to move reconnaissance teams on order.”

NOTE: Use subparagraphs (3) and (4) if chemical platoons are training with the HQ.

(3) Each platoon moves to the AA in the respective division it is supporting. Upon arrival at the AA, the platoon leader is given the following briefing:

“Hostile forces have used chemical weapons to restrict movement of maneuver units and logistical operations. An area deemed critical for future operation, grid _____ and _____, is suspected of being contaminated. In addition, division elements have reported biological attack indicators in the vicinity of grid _____.

“The reconnaissance platoon is tasked to perform chemical reconnaissance and biological sampling in the suspected areas of contamination. Time is of critical importance. The platoon has _____ hours to accomplish the mission and report the findings. Take appropriate action to gather the required information. Then prepare to assume a new mission on order.”

(4) After the accomplishment of its mission, the platoon is directed back to the AA and occupies its portion of the perimeter. After several hours have passed, direct the platoon leader to report to the division chemical officer for the following briefing.

“At DDTTTT hours, OPFOR used two 3-kiloton (estimated) nuclear weapons in the vicinity of grid coordinates _____ (brigade sector) and _____ (brigade sector). Both attacks were surface bursts. The resulting contamination hampers friendly operations. Locating, marking, and establishing the extent and intensity of the contamination are critical for conducting current and future operations.

“The reconnaissance platoon's mission is to conduct a radiological reconnaissance in each area of the effected brigades. The platoon has _____ hours to accomplish the mission and report the findings. Safety requirements are according to the company or platoon SOP or NBCC additional instructions. Avoid OPFOR contact if possible and minimize the exposure and vulnerability of the reconnaissance elements by using terrain masking and accepted movement techniques.”

c. Coordinating instructions.

Figure 4-3. Sample FRAGO for FTX 3 (continued)

(1) Current overlay remains in effect.

(2) Request for decontamination support as necessary.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Troop safety information is according to the unit's SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-3. Sample FRAGO for FTX 3 (continued)

b. Table 4-6 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this FTX.

Table 4-6. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for FTX 3

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Alert and Prepare to Move	2
2	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
3	Conduct a Chemical/Biological Recon	6
4	Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter	4
5	Prepare for and React to a Nuclear Attack	3
6	Perform a Tactical Road March	2
7	React to an Ambush	Included in Event 6
8	React to Indirect Fire	Included in Event 6
9	Conduct a Radiological Recon	6
10	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	2
Total Time:		26 Hours
<p>NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p>		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander trains and can evaluate this exercise. If possible, an O/C is with each section and with the OPFOR.

b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR for this FTX requires at least platoon strength with four soldiers dressed as civilians.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment consist of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit. Additionally, one vehicle with a radio and an operator is also required for controlling and monitoring operations and one or more vehicles are required for the OPFOR.

d. Maneuver area. The area should permit a road march of 15 kilometers and the production of large area smoke. The area should also contain two sites suitable for setting up smoke lines and one site for thorough decontamination.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-7.

Table 4-7. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 3

Ammunition	Basic Load
Cartridge, blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Body, practice hand grenade	See STRAC Manual
Fuze, hand grenade M228	See STRAC Manual
Smoke hand grenade 1, 2	See STRAC Manual
Mine, chemical agent	See STRAC Manual
Signal, illumination, cluster 1, 3	See STRAC Manual
Flare, surface, trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, booby trap 4	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, ground burst	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, hand grenade	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, atomic explosion	3
Training Aids and Devices	
Interference generator SG886T/UR, AN/TLQ17, AN/PRR8, or their replacement. AN/TDQ-T1 large area radiac trainer.	
NOTES	
1 Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors needed for control.	
2 Smoke hand grenade colors: HC green, yellow, red, and violet.	
3 Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.	
4 Simulator, booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.	

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE 4
PROVIDE DECONTAMINATION OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This sample FTX is designed to provide training and formal evaluation of the company's performance and proficiency in planning, supervising, and supporting decontamination.

2. Interface. The following STXs support this FTX:

- a. STX A, Perform a Tactical Road March.
- b. STX C, Provide a Thorough Decontamination Mission.
- c. STX E, Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter.
- d. STX G, Provide Operational Decontamination.

3. Training. This FTX is executed in a field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this FTX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks of each STX. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

- (1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.
- (2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.
- (3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.
- (4) CPXs conducted in garrison.
- (5) CFXs conducted in a field environment.
- (6) TEWTs.
- (7) COMEXs.
- (8) Simulations and games.

b. Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in--

- (1) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness programs.
- (2) Leader and individual confidence courses.
- (3) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
- (4) Awareness of the unit's heritage.

c. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this FTX.

- (1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercises.
 - (2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.
 - (3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the--
 - (a) Effects of weather and terrain on decontamination.
 - (b) Need to maintain local security.
 - (c) Selection of decontamination sites that provide cover and concealment and a passable road network.
 - (d) Coordination for water resupply, ADA, MP, EN, and Medical Support.
 - (e) Forecasting and planning of decontamination resources.
 - (f) Site layout and operations.
 - (g) Control of runoff and vapor hazards.
 - (4) Become familiar with planning and controlling decontamination and smoke operations (FM 3-5 and FM 3-50).
 - (5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.
 - (6) The planning process for the mission begins with the receipt of an OPORD. You should conduct an AAR after each STX, each reorganization, and on completion of the mission. If necessary, repeat portions of the exercise until you are satisfied with the company's performance.
 - (7) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.
- d. Training enhancers.
- (1) To conduct this exercise, use the OPORD given in the special situation.
 - (2) The OPFOR control must ensure the OPFOR element is aggressive and applies constant pressure on the decontamination unit during operations.
 - (3) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this FTX under--
 - (a) Varied environmental conditions, such as summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.
 - (b) Day and/or night operations.
 - (c) Varied NBC conditions.
 - (4) The training exercise is conducted under conventional and/or NBC conditions.
 - (5) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, they must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(6) Use the MILES and other simulators to realistically gage the effects of the OPFOR and how well the company defends itself.

(7) Prepare a plan based on METT-TC factors.

(a) Mission. What type of unit is the decontamination required for?

(b) Enemy. What is the threat?

(c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, trafficability, and meteorological data? Does the decontamination site selected have water points and good drainage?

(d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment?

(e) Time. When is the mission scheduled to start?

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact and what to do during air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.

(9) Be prepared to receive other missions.

(10) This FTX can run as an active NBC environment or any combination of environments. Each STX designed as part of this FTX was selected to train specific tasks.

(11) Use the collective tasks in chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The company is allocated sufficient resources to accomplish a thorough and an operational decontamination mission.

b. Exercising units accomplish the following operations:

(1) Develop a plan to accomplish the mission within the allocated time.

(2) Conduct a tactical movement.

(3) Establish and operate as part of a base defense organization.

(4) Maintain security throughout.

(5) Report information of intelligence value.

(6) Plan, coordinate, supervise, and support a thorough decontamination.

(7) Coordinate mission changes for an operational decontamination.

(8) Plan, coordinate, and support an operational decontamination.

c. Weapons of mass destruction have been used throughout the theater of operation.

5. Special Situation.

a. The company commander just received an OPORD from higher HQ and issued a warning order (Figure 4-4).

WARNING ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of Issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
<p>WARNING ORDER Number: _____</p> <p>References:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SITUATION. 2. MISSION. ___ Chemical Company conducts decontamination operations in the brigade support area (BSA) NLT DDTTTTMMYY vicinity grid ___ to reduce contamination and restore the brigade's logistic operations. 3. EXECUTION. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Concept of operations. Provide decontamination support in the brigade support area. Prepare to move from present position at _____ hours to join the 615th S&S Battalion as part of the base defense organization. Prepare to defend against ground and air attacks while occupying part of the base perimeter in the AA. On order prepare to provide decontamination support in the northern section of the brigade support area. Additional details on the mission will be provided at _____ hours at the company CP. b. Tasks to subordinate units. c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect. 4. SERVICE SUPPORT. 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. <p>ACKNOWLEDGE:</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 20px;"> NAME RANK </div>	

Figure 4-4. Sample Warning Order for FTX 4

b. Tasks to subordinate units. The platoon and HQ sections report to the company CP at the time specified in the warning order for more details on the concept of operations (Figure 4-5).

OPERATION ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
OPORD Number: _____ References:	
<p>1. SITUATION. Possibly small sabotage teams dressed as civilians are now operating in the area, so stay alert. The S2 informs us that airborne special-operations detachments are in the area and are capable of making attacks. Look out for possible ambush sites. Additionally, there are reports of chemical attacks within the AO, so stay prepared.</p>	
<p>2. MISSION. ___ Chemical Company conducts decontamination operations for ___ BCT NLT DDTTTTMMYY vicinity grid ___ to reduce contamination and restore combat power.</p>	
<p>3. EXECUTION.</p> <p>a. Concept of operations. Provide area decontamination support of the maneuver units as shown on the overlay. Depart for the AA no later than ___ hours. Move from the AA no later than ___ hours en route to the decontamination site. Establish the decontamination site and prepare to provide decontamination support for an extended period. Troop safety information. Do not exceed a negligible risk to unwarned and exposed personnel with an OEG at 50 cGy total dose initially. MOPP level will be determined later using MOPP analysis. Current time is ___ hours. The information in the warning order is still good and has given you a start on planning for the mission.</p> <p>b. Tasks to subordinate units.</p> <p>c. Coordinating instructions.</p> <p>(1) Current overlay remains in effect.</p> <p>(2) The operations section is to coordinate signal with the supported units.</p> <p>(3) Air defense condition is weapons tight. This means you can only shoot at aircraft that are attacking your location.</p> <p>d. The company HQ is to initially locate at grid _____ until ___ hours tomorrow. There is no change in the battalion HQ location. Succession of command is per the unit's SOP.</p>	
<p>4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per the unit's SOP except medical. ___ Medical Company is providing an aid station at this location on the overlay.</p>	
<p>5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <p>a. Current SOI is in effect.</p> <p>b. Prepare for a mission change (for operational decontamination) on order.</p>	
ACKNOWLEDGE:	
NAME RANK	

Figure 4-5. Sample OPORD for FTX 4

c. Plan and move the company as directed in STX A to the supported unit. The company occupies a position within the perimeter and supports a portion of the supported units perimeter defense. Upon arrival, the commander reports to the supported unit's operations section.

d. The planning process for the mission begins with the receipt of a FRAGO (Figure 4-6).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
FRAGO Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
2. MISSION. ___ Chemical Company conducts thorough decontamination operations for 23rd Maintenance Company NLT DDTTTTMMYY vicinity grid ____ for ___ BCT to conduct operational decontamination operations.	
3. EXECUTION.	
a. Concept of operations. Provide decontamination support to the 23rd Maintenance Company located in the vicinity of grid _____. This is a thorough decontamination mission, and also prepare for operational decontamination.	
b. Tasks to subordinate units.	
c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect. Coordinate with the contaminated unit and prepare to start decontamination operations no later than ____ hours. The decontamination operation may require more than 12 continuous hours of decontamination support. Smoke support is available upon request.	
4. SERVICE SUPPORT.	
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.	
ACKNOWLEDGE:	
NAME RANK	

Figure 4-6. Sample FRAGO for FTX 4

e. Table 4-8 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this FTX.

Table 4-8. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for FTX 4

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Alert and Prepare to Move	2
2	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
3	Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter	1
4	Maintain Security/Defense	6
5	Prepare for Decontamination Operations	Included in Event 4
6	Conduct a Site Selection and Move	2
7	Establish a Thorough Decontamination Site	2
8	Operate a Thorough Decontamination site	20
9	Sustain Decontamination Operations	Included in Event 8
10	Change the Mission	3
11	Select an Operational Decontamination Site	.5
12	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
13	Establish an Operational Decontamination Site	.5
14	Operate a Operational Decontamination Site	4
15	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		44 Hours
NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The next higher HQ should provide the primary Os/Cs and should conduct this exercise. If possible, one O/C is with the HQ sections and two with the OPFOR.

b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR for this FTX consists of two squads. One squad is dressed as local civilians. The other squad is dressed and equipped as American or other allied soldiers. The OPFOR should replicate agents, saboteurs, and refugee activities. Limit OPFOR activities to observation; hit-run reconnaissance; harassing attacks; and in the case of refugee traffic, requests for assistance.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment consist of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit. Additionally, two vehicles each with a radio and an operator are also required for controlling and monitoring operations, and one or more vehicles are required for the OPFOR.

d. Maneuver area. The area should permit a road march of 30 kilometers. The area should also contain a site suitable for setting up a thorough decontamination.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-9.

Table 4-9. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 4

Ammunition	Basic Load
Cartridge, blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Body, practice hand grenade	See STRAC Manual
Fuze, hand grenade M228	See STRAC Manual
Smoke hand grenade ^{1, 2}	See STRAC Manual
Mine, chemical agent	See STRAC Manual
Signal, illumination, cluster ^{1, 3}	See STRAC Manual
Flare, surface, trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, booby trap ⁴	See STRAC Manual
Training Aids and Devices	
Interference generator SG886T/UR, AN/TLQ17, AN/PRR8, or their replacement. M9 SPAL. Polyethylene glycol (PEG-200) chemical simulant. Training aid, skin decontaminating, M58A1. M256 simulator, detector tickets, chemical agent: training (TRAINS). RCMT. Mines, M68 practice antipersonnel.	
NOTES	
¹ Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors needed for control. ² Smoke hand grenade colors: HC green, yellow, red, and violet. ³ Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute. ⁴ Simulator, booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.	

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE 5

PLAN AND SUPPORT SMOKE, DECONTAMINATION, AND NBC RECONNAISSANCE OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This sample FTX is designed to provide training and formal evaluation of the company's performance and proficiency in planning, conducting, and supervising decontamination, smoke, and NBC reconnaissance support.

2. Interface. The following STXs support this FTX:

- a. STX A, Perform a Tactical Road March.
- b. STX B, Provide a Smoke Screen to a Fixed Site.
- c. STX C, Provide a Thorough Decontamination Mission.
- d. STX D, Conceal Movement.
- e. STX E, Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter.
- f. STX F, Provide Concealment for a Breaching Operation.
- g. STX G, Provide Operational Decontamination.
- h. STX H, Provide Concealment for a River Operation.
- i. STX I, Plan and Support a Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance.
- j. STX J, Plan and Support a Radiological Reconnaissance.

3. Training. This FTX is executed in a field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this FTX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks of each STX. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

- (1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.
- (2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and/or alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.
- (3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.
- (4) CPXs conducted in garrison.
- (5) CFXs conducted in a field environment.
- (6) TEWTs.
- (7) COMEXs.
- (8) Simulations and games.

b. Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in--

- (1) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness programs.
- (2) Leader and individual confidence courses.
- (3) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
- (4) Awareness of the unit's heritage.

c. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this FTX.

- (1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercises.
- (2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.
- (3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the following points:
 - (a) Effects of weather and terrain on decontamination, smoke, and reconnaissance operations.
 - (b) Security maintenance.
 - (c) Smoke control points that allow for continual observation of the selected area.
 - (d) Resupply considerations (off-line versus on-line).
 - (e) Decontamination sites that provide cover and concealment and a passable road network.
 - (f) Coordination for water resupply, ADA, MP, EN, and medical support.
 - (g) Forecasting and planning decontamination, smoke, and reconnaissance resources and resupply.
 - (h) Site layout and operations.
 - (i) Control of runoff and vapor hazards.
 - (j) What do we want the chemical/biological reconnaissance to do?
 - (k) Where do we want the chemical/biological reconnaissance?
 - (l) When do we perform the chemical/biological reconnaissance?
 - (m) Why are we performing the reconnaissance?
 - (n) Actions to take on contact with hostile/enemy forces.
 - (o) Coordination of the passage of lines and lateral limits.
 - (p) Coordination for fire support.
- (4) Become familiar with planning and controlling decontamination, smoke, and reconnaissance operations (FM 3-5, FM 3-19, and FM 3-50).

(5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.

(6) The planning process for the mission begins with the receipt of a warning order. You should conduct an AAR after each STX, each reorganization, and on completion of the mission. If necessary, repeat portions of the exercise until you are satisfied with your unit's performance.

(7) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

d. Training enhancers.

(1) To conduct this exercise, use the warning order given in the special situation.

(2) The OPFOR control must keep ground probe directed against the unit, especially if the remainder of the perimeter is notional.

(3) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and the key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this FTX under--

(a) Varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.

(b) Day and/or night operations.

(c) Varied NBC conditions.

(4) The training exercise is conducted under conventional and/or NBC conditions.

(5) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(6) Use the MILES and other simulators to realistically gage the effects of the OPFOR and how well the company defends itself.

(7) Prepare a plan based on METT-TC factors.

(a) Mission. How far must we move, and how long is the smoke to last? What type of unit is decontamination required for? Is the mission a zone, area, or route reconnaissance? What assets are required to perform the mission?

(b) Enemy. What is the threat? Information on the NBC threat is obtained from intelligence estimates. This information may increase or decrease the time required to complete the mission based on the situation.

(c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, meteorological data, and distance for fog oil resupply? Does the decontamination site selected have water points and good drainage? Dictate which reconnaissance technique is used: either mounted or dismounted. Open, trafficable areas lend themselves to mounted operations, while urban, jungle, or otherwise restricted terrain is better handled dismounted for reconnaissance.

(d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment? What assets available can influence the number of vehicles or teams used on a particular mission? Other missions may have assets tied up already, so mission planners will determine whether assets available can accomplish the mission.

(e) Time. When is the mission scheduled to start? The time required to complete the mission may dictate the size of the area that requires reconnoitering, or it may restrict the number of points at which readings or samples are taken.

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact and what to do during air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.

(9) Be prepared to receive other missions.

(10) Under conventional conditions delete the NBC events from the STXs. Use conventional conditions to introduce this FTX. Next, incorporate a threat of NBC or NBC conditions into subsequent iterations. This FTX can run as an active NBC environment or any combination of environments. Each STX designed as part of this FTX was selected to train specific tasks.

(11) Use the collective tasks in chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The company is allocated sufficient resources to accomplish a long-term mission in the corps area.

b. Exercising units accomplish the following operations:

(1) Develop a plan to accomplish the mission within the allocated time.

(2) Conduct a tactical movement.

(3) Establish a defense.

(4) Maintain security throughout.

(5) Report information of intelligence value.

(6) Plan, coordinate, and sustain decontamination missions.

(7) Plan, conduct, and maintain smoke coverage of the selected area.

(8) Plan, coordinate, supervise, and support NBC reconnaissance operations.

(9) Prepare to assume a new mission on order.

c. Weapons of mass destruction have been used throughout the theater of operation.

5. Special Situation.

a. The company has just received a warning order from the division chemical officer (Figure 4-7)

WARNING ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
WARNING ORDER Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
2. MISSION. Provide reconnaissance, decontamination, and smoke support to the division starting in two hours. Report to the division tactical CP for a detailed briefing on the mission.	
3. EXECUTION.	
a. Concept of operations.	
b. Tasks to subordinate units.	
(1) Alert the company and then report to the division tactical CP, where the division chemical officer gives the following briefing:	
<p>“Here's the current situation: Just at first light this morning, hostile forces conducted several chemical agent attacks throughout the division zone of operations. _____ troops from the division covering are pulling back for reconstitution. The transportation company from the forward support battalion (FSB) in the 1st Brigade sector and an armor company in the 2nd Brigade sector were also hit with a chemical agent attack. Also an unidentified aircraft was observed spraying an unknown substance over an area of the 3rd Brigade.</p> <p>“The company's mission is to provide concealment for the _____ troop as it moves from passage point 3 to the decontamination site located at grid _____. Then screen the thorough decontamination operation, which you are also supporting. A platoon from the corps smoke company is tasked to provide a deception screen at a nearby location in the division. The company is to provide thorough decontamination support to the transportation company in 1st Brigade and the contaminated armor company in 2nd Brigade. Also conduct a chemical reconnaissance in the 3rd Brigade sector. Here are the details...”</p>	
(2) Plan for the operation, brief platoon leaders, and have them move out on their mission.	
(3) When the company or individual platoons occupy an AA, normally it's with another unit. Establish the unit's portion of the perimeter; maintain security requirements throughout; react to civilians in the area, OPFOR sighting, and probe of the perimeter.	
(4) While the NBC reconnaissance platoon is conducting its NBC reconnaissance, it becomes contaminated. As a result, it needs decontamination support from the company. Plan and support decontamination for the platoon.	
(5) After the reconnaissance and decontamination support mission for all of the elements is completed and there is no longer any requirement for the smoke screen, the company receives the following update and mission from the division chemical officer.	

Figure 4-7. Sample Warning Order for FTX 5

"Within the past four hours, small-scale chemical attacks have occurred throughout the division sector. Additionally, a nuclear weapon detonated in the 1st Brigade sector. The division is to conduct a counterattack through the 1st Brigade sector at DDTTTTMMYY. The engineers will begin mobility operations at _____ hours forward of the 1st Brigade.

The company's mission is to provide operational decontamination support to each brigade and the Division Support Command (DISCOM). Prepare to conduct a radiological reconnaissance forward of the 1st Brigade along the counterattack axis. The reconnaissance must be completed no later than _____ hours. You will also screen the engineer's breaching operation forward of 1st Brigade. Here is a copy of the OPORD."

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-7. Sample Warning Order for FTX 5 (continued)

b. Table 4-10 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this FTX.

Table 4-10. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for FTX 5

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Alert and Prepare to Move	2
2	Perform a Tactical Road March	2
3	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	Included in Event 3
4	Plan, Control, and Support a Chemical/Biological Recon	6
5	Conceal Movement	2
6	Prepare for a Thorough Decon	1
7	Conduct a Site Selection	1
8	Establish a Decontamination Site	2
9	Operate a Thorough Decontamination site	16
10	Provide a Smoke Screen to a Fixed Site (Decontamination Site)	Included in Event 9
11	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
12	Occupy an AA and Defend the Unit's Perimeter	6
13	Perform a Tactical Road March	1
14	Plan, Control, and Support a Radiological Recon	6
15	Plan and Control Concealment of a Breaching Operation and River Crossing	3
16	Perform an Operational Decontamination	2
17	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		52 Hours
<p>NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p>		

6. Support Requirement.

- a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander trains and can evaluate this exercise. If possible, an O/C is with each section and with the OPFOR.
- b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR for this FTX requires at least platoon strength with three soldiers dressed as civilians.
- c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment consist of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit. Additionally, one vehicle with a radio and an operator is also required for controlling and monitoring operations, and one or more vehicles are required for the OPFOR.
- d. Maneuver area. The area should permit a road march of 10 kilometers and the production of large-area smoke. The area should also contain one site suitable for setting up smoke lines and one site for the thorough decontamination.
- e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-11.

Table 4-11. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5

Ammunition	Basic Load
Cartridge, blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Body, practice hand grenade	See STRAC Manual
Fuze, hand grenade M228	See STRAC Manual
Smoke hand grenade 1, 2	See STRAC Manual
Mine, chemical agent	See STRAC Manual
Smoke pot, floating type	2 per generator
Smoke pot, ground type	2 per generator
Signal, illumination, cluster 1, 3	See STRAC Manual
Flare, surface, trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, booby trap 4	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, ground burst	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, hand grenade	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, atomic explosion	1
Training Aids and Devices	
Interference generator SG886T/UR, AN/TLQ17, AN/PRR8, or their replacement. M9 SPAL. Polyethylene glycol (PEG-200) chemical simulant. Training aid, skin decontaminating, M58A1. M256 simulator, detector tickets, chemical agent: training (TRAINS).	
NOTES	
1 Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors needed for control.	
2 Smoke hand grenade colors: HC green, yellow, red, and violet.	
3 Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.	
4 Simulator, booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.	

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE A
PERFORM A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

1. Objective. This sample STX provides functional training for the unit commander in exercising his C² responsibilities over his subordinate elements. It is specifically designed to provide the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and other key leaders with training in tactically marching the unit (whole or by echelon) to specific areas of operation.

2. Interface. This STX is used whenever the unit is required to move from one location to another to include certain convoy operations. It should be used several times during major FTXs.

3. Training.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.

(3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.

b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.

(1) Become familiar with the requirements for a tactical road march according to FM 55-30 and FM 71-10.

(2) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.

(a) Make initial strip maps.

(b) Select the initial start point (SP), checkpoints (CPs), and release point (RP).

(3) Discuss the duties of the quartering/advance party, to include their initial defensive perimeter.

(a) Reconnoiter the routes and the AA. Make recommendations for changing the routes or the AA, if necessary (based upon the ground reconnaissance).

(b) Organize the AA or the new position, if applicable. Select general locations for the CP, observation posts (OPs), and each vehicle.

(c) Improve and mark the entrance, the exit, and the internal traffic routes within the AA.

(d) Establish security for the march and during halts.

- Assign air guards.

- Assign sectors of responsibility to the vehicle commander during the march.

- Orient the operators of crew-served weapons on their specific sector of responsibility during the march.

- Use the herringbone or the coil formation and post OPs during halts.

- Reconnoiter ahead at halts (responsibility of the lead element).

(e) Use the following procedures if the march unit is split by enemy actions:

- The senior person in each part of the march unit takes charge and attempts to reestablish or reorganize the march unit.

- The head of the column continues on the original route, if contact is lost between the elements.

- The tail of the column rallies at the last CP passed and takes an alternate route.

(f) Exercise limited visibility considerations.

- Reduced interval. The company's SOP shows how to use "cat eyes" to determine the proper interval.

- Traffic control points. Use flashlights; the company's SOP identifies recognition signals.

- Halts. Vehicle operators maintain visual contact with the vehicle to their front and maintain 360-degree security. The last vehicle in the movement order provides rear security for the element.

(4) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

c. Training enhancers.

(1) To conduct this exercise, use the order given in FTX 1 or FTX 2 or train this exercise by itself using the FRAGO in the special situation.

(2) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.

(a) Mission. How far must we go, and why are we moving?

(b) Enemy. What is the likelihood of an attack by ground, air, or NBC?

(c) Terrain and weather. What routes are available? What is the condition of the routes? What effect will weather have on the routes?

(d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment? What additional resources are needed?

(e) Time available. How much time do my men need to get ready? How long will it take us to get there? How much planning time do I have?

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(3) Conduct necessary coordination and modify the plan accordingly.

(4) The commander briefs subordinate leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact, what to do during air attacks, how to cross a contaminated area, and control measures.

(5) Check load plans and make necessary modifications. Loading out for the road march is an excellent time to do this.

(6) Conduct the road march. Report the arrival at and the clearing of the SP. Maintain march interval, local security, and speed. Report the crossing of the RP.

(7) React to situations presented during the movement. Remember, your mission is to move. Anything that prevents you from reaching the RP has stopped or prevented you from accomplishing your mission.

(8) Keep the following standards in mind:

(a) March units cross the SP, CPs, and RP at the time specified in the movement order.

(b) March units close into the AA at the time specified in the movement order.

(c) Ensure that vehicles do not exceed the catch-up speed.

(d) Maintain distances between vehicles as specified in the march order.

(e) Follow the march route, except to react to enemy contact or to bypass obstacles.

(f) Keep air guards up, scanning for aircraft throughout the movement.

(g) Link up with the quartering party or contact-point elements without causing the remainder of the column to stop.

(h) At all halts--

- Observe time constraints as outlined in the march order.

- Ensure that the march unit assumes a herringbone or a coil formation upon halting.

- Conduct crew preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).

- Maintain security with at least one air guard per vehicle, alert and manning a weapon at all times.

- Ensure that vehicle operators maintain visual contact with the vehicle to their front and maintain 360-degree security. The last vehicle in the movement order provides rear security for the element.

- Ensure that elements react to enemy contact as prescribed in the OPORD.

(i) Procedures for disabled vehicles:

- Move them off the road to the right before they stop.

- Ensure that the driver attempts to repair the vehicle.

- Ensure that the first recovery vehicle to reach a disabled vehicle recovers it, unless orders directing other action are received.
- Provide security for the trail party, especially during recovery operations.
- Ensure that the trail officer notifies the convoy commander of the disabled vehicle and recovers or destroys it, depending on the tactical situation. Destruction of the vehicle is a command decision used as a last resort to prevent capture by the enemy.
- Destroy disabled equipment by using explosives or gunfire, or use artillery or air strikes after the convoy has cleared the area.
- If possible, remove critical parts before destroying the vehicle.

(9) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, train in an NBC environment using simulants, or train at night when the training section or elements are not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options. To vary the level of proficiency, train this STX--

- (a) With or without OPFOR. Initially, conduct this exercise without threat personnel.
- (b) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months or in desert, jungle, or mountainous areas.
- (c) During both day and night operations.
- (d) Under varied NBC conditions.

(10) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(11) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.

(12) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and the firing planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan and recommend tactical strategies to the commander to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. As training progresses, walk-through training can show the training unit how to conduct planning and effective coordination for developing recommendations to the commander. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.

4. General Situation. The company is moving from a base defense to an operational area or between operational areas. Minimum standards consist of following directed control measures, maintaining security throughout the movement, and making reports as required.

5. Special Situation. The following special situation is used to exercise the HQ sections, including the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and operations section:

a. The company commander has received an OPORD from higher HQ and has issued a FRAGO to his unit (Figure 4-8).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER	
<p>FRAGO Number: _____</p> <p>References:</p> <p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>2. MISSION. __ Chemical Company conducts tactical road march to AA vicinity grid __ NLT __ hours to prepare for future operations.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Concept of operations. Conduct a tactical road march at hours to the AA vicinity grid _____. Time for closing into and securing the AA is no later than ____ hours. We will remain in the AA until ____ hours, and during that time, we must continue planning for the current mission.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Tasks to subordinate units.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.</p> <p>4. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <p>5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <p>ACKNOWLEDGE:</p>	<p>Copy ___ of ___ copies</p> <p>Issuing headquarters</p> <p>Place of issue</p> <p>Date-time group of signature</p> <p>Message reference number</p>
<p>NAME</p> <p>RANK</p>	

Figure 4-8. Sample FRAGO for STX A

b. Table 4-12 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this STX.

Table 4-12. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for STX A

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Plan and Coordinate a Tactical Road March	2
2	Conduct a Reconnaissance (Primary and Alternate Routes)	2
3	Deploy the Quartering Party	2
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6
5	Brief the Commander and Conduct an AAR	1
Total Time:		13 Hours
<p>NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p>		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander and unit leaders train and evaluate the sections and platoons. Use additional Os/Cs, if needed, at the squad level to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR are not required for the basic STX. If an ambush, an air attack, or an NBC attack is included, add the necessary OPFOR.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment needed are those organic to the company, plus two radios with operators to act as higher HQ.

d. Maneuver area. The training area should consist of a road that will allow a tactical march of at least 10 kilometers.

e. Consolidated support requirements. There are no support requirements for this STX.

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE B

PROVIDE A SMOKE SCREEN TO A FIXED SITE

1. Objective. This sample STX trains a chemical company to plan and conduct deliberate smoke support to a fixed site over a long duration. This exercise emphasizes planning and preparing for uninterrupted coverage of a specific area. It also provides the commander and other key personnel with realistic training in preparing positions for long-term occupancy.

2. Interface. This mission is primarily assigned in the Corps or Theatre Army area. Minimum ground threat is expected with possible air or NBC strikes. Smoke is employed on fixed or semi-fixed facilities to prevent enemy direct aerial observation and visual attack bombing. For example, a smoke unit is tasked to provide a smoke haze over the main supply routes (MSRs) or the supply, maintenance, and medical facilities in a city. Although usually assigned to Army unit or facility missions, smoke units may support Navy, Air Force, civilian, or allied units or activities. A smoke screen is also employed as a deception, concealing a nonexistent or dummy facility. The available road net permits rapid relocation of the unit when wind shifts occur and during petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) resupply.

3. Training Enhancers. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and/or alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.

(3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.

b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.

(1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.

(2) Conduct a terrain walk with company personnel over the mission area.

(3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the--

(a) Effects of weather and the terrain on the smoke.

(b) Need to maintain local security.

(c) Selection of smoke positions that provide 360-degree coverage.

(d) Smoke control points that allow continual observation of the selected area.

(e) Actions to take upon enemy contact.

(4) Become familiar with planning and controlling smoke operations (FM 3-50).

(5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.

(6) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

c. Training Enhancers.

- (1) To conduct this exercise, use the OPORD in the special situation.
- (2) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader's tasks, you can then train this STX--
 - (a) With moving or stationary elements.
 - (b) With or without OPFOR.
 - (c) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.
 - (d) During both day and night operations.
 - (e) Under varied NBC conditions.
- (3) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, train in an NBC environment using simulants, or train at night when the training unit is not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options.
- (4) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.
- (5) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.
- (6) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan tactical strategies to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.
- (7) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.
 - (a) Mission. How far must we move, and how long is the screen to last?
 - (b) Enemy. What is the threat? How likely is an attack by ground, air, or NBC?
 - (c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, trafficability, meteorological data, and distance for fog oil resupply?
 - (d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment?
 - (e) Time available. When is the mission scheduled to start? Should fog oil be stockpiled on site?
 - (f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?
- (8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact and what to do for air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.

(9) Be prepared to receive other missions.

(10) This STX may be conducted as a deception to support major unit operations (for example, supporting a decoy airfield or supply point).

(11) Conduct an AAR at the conclusion of the STX.

(12) Use the collective tasks in Chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The chemical unit is engaged in combat or combat is imminent. The unit is in direct support of a unit or activity operating a fix site. Long-term (more than one hour) smoke is required.

b. The trainer-evaluator states the special situation identified in paragraph 5.

5. Special Situation. The following special situation is used to exercise the HQ sections, including the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and operations section:

a. The company receives an OPORD from higher HQ (Figure 4-9).

OPERATION ORDER	
<p>OPORD Number: _____</p> <p>References:</p> <p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Enemy forces. Enemy threat in the Theater Army Area Command (TAACOM) consists of medium-range aircraft attacking allied facilities and enemy agents and/or special forces soldiers who have attacked small facilities and activities of strategic importance. Lone terrorists and enemy sympathizers have infiltrated local towns and installations.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Friendly forces. 91st Chemical Battalion provides general support to 22nd TAACOM effective DDMMYY.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Attachments and detachments. 170th Chemical Company (SG) is attached to the 2965th Supply and Service Facility (pipeline) effective DDMMYY.</p> <p>2. MISSION. 91st Chemical Battalion provides smoke and decontamination support within 22nd TAACOM's area of operations vicinity grid __ effective DDTTTTMMYY to restore combat power to all units.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION.</p>	<p>Copy ___ of ___ copies</p> <p>Issuing headquarters</p> <p>Place of issue</p> <p>Date-time group of signature</p> <p>Message reference number</p>

Figure 4-9. Example OPORD for STX B

a. Concept of operation.

(1) 91st Chemical Battalion provides on-call support of three smoke and two decontamination companies in assigned areas.

(2) 170th Chemical Company (SG) provides a smoke (blanket/haze) to support the oil pipeline facilities in vicinity _____ from DDTTTTMMYY to DDTTTTMMYY.

b. Tasks to subordinate units.

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Class I, II/IV, III, V, IX, and X. The battalion Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) will coordinate requirements.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command. The battalion CP is located in vicinity _____ until DDTTTTMMYY.

b. Signal. SOI index ___ is in effect. The battalion S2 or the S3 will coordinate SOI changes.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-9. Example OPORD for STX B (continued)

b. Table 4-13 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this STX.

Table 4-13. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for STX B

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Give a Warning Order to the Designated Smoke Company	0.5
2	Plan and Coordinate Mission Requirements	2
3	Reconnoiter the Mission Area	2
4	Provide for Mission Sustainment	4
5	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		9.5 hours
NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander and unit leaders train and can evaluate the HQ sections (internal evaluation). If the whole company is training this exercise, additional Os/Cs (if available) are used at the smoke control point and along the smoke line to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR are not required for the basic STX. If an attack by ground, air, or NBC is included, add the necessary OPFOR.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment should consist of communications-electronics operation instructions, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit. Two additional radios with operators to act as higher HQ or the supported units are also required.

d. Maneuver area. A training area that permits long-term smoke generation (METT-TC dependent) is required. The area should permit relocating, as wind shifts occur, to maintain coverage. An area of 20 kilometers is recommended.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-14.

Table 4-14. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX B

Ammunition	Basic Load
Smoke pot, floating type	2 per generator
Smoke pot, ground type	2 per generator
Other	
Motor gasoline (MOGAS), diesel gasoline, and fog oil	

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE C
PROVIDE THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION

1. Objective. This sample STX trains a chemical company HQ to plan a thorough decontamination site for US and allied units and activities. This exercise emphasizes forecasting, planning, and conducting uninterrupted decontamination support for an extended period. It also provides realistic training for HQ section leaders in supporting platoons performing thorough decontamination operations.
2. Interface. Thorough decontamination is resource-intensive and is conducted as part of a unit's reconstitution operation. Generally, maneuver companies conduct thorough decontamination operations in the BSA; battalions perform this operation in the division support area (DSA); and brigades conduct this operation in the corps support area (CSA).
3. Training Enhancers. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.
 - a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--
 - (1) Classroom discussion to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.
 - (2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.
 - (3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.
 - b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.
 - (1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.
 - (2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.
 - (3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the following points:
 - (a) Effects of weather and terrain.
 - (b) Need for maintaining local security.
 - (c) Selection of decontamination sites that provide cover and concealment and a passable road network.
 - (d) "Coordination for water supply, ADA, MP, EN, and medical support."
 - (e) Operating as part of a larger element.
 - (f) Forecasting and planning decontamination resources.
 - (g) Site layout and operations.
 - (h) Control of runoff and vapor hazards.
 - (4) Become familiar with planning and controlling thorough decontamination operations (FM 3-5).

- (5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.
- (6) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

c. Training enhancers.

(1) To conduct this exercise, use the OPORD given in FTX 2 or FTX 4, or train this exercise by itself using the OPORD in the special situation.

(2) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader's tasks, you can then train this STX--

- (a) With moving or stationary elements.
- (b) With or without OPFOR.
- (c) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.
- (d) During both day and night operations.
- (e) Under varied NBC conditions.

(3) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, to train in an NBC environment using simulants, or to train at night when the training unit is not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options.

(4) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(5) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.

(6) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan tactical strategies to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.

- (7) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.
 - (a) Mission. What sector and what type of units are in that sector?
 - (b) Enemy. What is the threat? How likely is an attack by ground, air, or NBC?
 - (c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, trafficability, and meteorological data?
 - (d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment? How far are we from the supply point? What method is planned for resupply? Who will provide security between units?

(e) Time available. When is the mission scheduled to start? Should decontamination supplies be stockpiled on site?

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commanders brief unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact and what to do for air attacks, control measures, and position preparation for long-term occupancy. Ensure HQ sections are properly exercised in their functional areas.

(9) Conduct coordination necessary to ensure defense of the decontamination site.

(10) Conduct an AAR at the conclusion of the STX.

(11) Use the collective tasks in Chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The chemical unit is engaged in combat and is in support of a maneuver unit. Communication is established and you are receiving reports according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The threat force has employed weapons of mass destruction (NBC) in the general vicinity of the maneuver unit's AO. The chemical company has received the following warning order: "Prepare to provide thorough decontamination operations".

b. The trainer-evaluator states the special situation identified in paragraph 5.

5. Special Situation. The following special situation is used to exercise the HQ sections, including the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and operations section:

a. The company has received an OPORD from higher HQ (Figure 4-10).

OPERATION ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
OPORD Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
a. Enemy forces.	
(1) Annex A (Intelligence) to OPORD.	
(2) Elements of the 12th Operational Maneuver Group have temporarily stalled in their attack in the division sector. Motorized Rifle Regiment (BMP and BTR) Divisions are estimated at 75 percent strength with a fair resupply capability and good morale.	

Figure 4-10. Sample OPORD for STX C

(3) Enemy forces have used persistent and nonpersistent agents in the corps area. Residual contamination remains in some areas; future enemy chemical attacks will most likely occur in a concentrated area near the forward edge of the battle area (FEBA) or at the division rear.

b. Friendly forces.

(1) XVI US Corps attacks DDTTTTMMYY to seize objectives on Phase Line Jet and restore the corps sector.

(2) 66th ID (Mech) attacks DDTTTTMMYY to seize objective Prop.

(3) 123rd Armor Brigade (+) attacks DDTTTTMMYY to seize the high ground vicinity, Orange Mountain.

2. MISSION. 23rd AD defends the high ground along Phase Line Rocket no later than DDTTTTMMYY.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of operation. The three phases of the attack are as follows: (omitted).

b. Omitted.

c. 23rd AD retain Phase Line Shuttle until DDTTTTMMYY. Feint a battalion attack as part of the corps deception plan at DDTTTTMMYY (see Annex J, Deception Plan). Reconstitute contaminated units.

d. Coordinating instructions: Decontaminated units may remain in MOPP level Zero until they leave the AA. Units are then to assume MOPP level 2.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Annex M, OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command. (Omitted)

b. Signal. SOI index ___ is in effect.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-10. Sample OPORD for STX C (continued)

b. Table 4-15 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this STX.

Table 4-15. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for STX C

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Plan and Coordinate Thorough Decontamination Operations	2
2	Reconnoiter Decontamination Site Areas	2
3	Provide for Mission Sustainment	10
4	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		15 Hours
NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander and unit leaders train and can evaluate the HQ sections (internal evaluation). If the whole company is training this exercise, additional Os/Cs (if available) are used at the decontamination site to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR is not required for the basic STX. If an attack by ground, air, or NBC is included, add the necessary OPFOR.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment should consist of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit. Two additional radios with operators to act as higher HQ or the supported units are also required.

d. Maneuver area. The area, ideally, should allow a large area for a thorough decontamination site. The area should permit relocating as wind shifts occur.

e. Consolidated support requirements. No support requirements are required for this exercise.

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE D

CONCEAL MOVEMENT

1. Objective. This sample STX trains a chemical company to plan and conduct hasty and deliberate smoke screens to conceal movement. It provides the commander and HQ section leaders with practice in making rapid decisions.

2. Interface. This mission is primarily assigned when a movement is subject to observation by OPFOR. This mission may be in direct support of combat operations or any type of unit moving on an MSR. Combat units often produce hasty screens, but smoke units may provide them whenever the situation permits. Units can conceal movements by projecting smoke directly on all suspected or known enemy observer positions. Another way is to produce a screen between the OPFOR positions and the unit. A smoke generator can do this in a variety of situations such as concealing movements along a MSR or support of a deliberate attack. The smoke unit may create a single smoke line or may make a series of successive smoke lines that conceal a unit's movement. A screen may also be employed as a deception, concealing a feint or nonexistent activity.

3. Training Enhancers. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and/or alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.

(3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.

b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.

(1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.

(2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.

(3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the--

(a) Effects of weather and terrain on smoke.

(b) Need for maintaining local security.

(c) Selection of smoke positions that provide 360-degree coverage.

(d) Selection of smoke control points that allow continual observation of the selected area.

(e) Resupply considerations (off-line versus on-line).

(f) Actions to take upon enemy contact.

(4) Become familiar with planning and controlling smoke operations (FM 3-50).

- (5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.
- (6) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

c. Training enhancers.

- (1) To conduct this STX, use the FRAGO in the special situation.
- (2) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader's tasks, you can then train this STX--
 - (a) With moving or stationary elements.
 - (b) With or without OPFOR.
 - (c) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.
 - (d) During both day and night operations.
 - (e) Under varied NBC conditions.
- (3) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, train in an NBC environment using simulants, or train at night when the training unit is not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options.
- (4) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.
- (5) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.
- (6) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan tactical strategies to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.
- (7) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.
 - (a) Mission. How far must we move, and how long is the screen to last?
 - (b) Enemy. What is the threat? How likely is an attack by ground, air, or NBC?
 - (c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, trafficability, meteorological data, and distance for fog oil resupply?
 - (d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment?
 - (e) Time available. When is the mission scheduled to start? Should fog oil be stockpiled on site?
 - (f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact and what to do for air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.

(9) Be prepared to receive other missions.

(10) This STX may be conducted as a deception to support major unit operations (for example, concealing the absence of movement as well as the presence of a moving unit).

(11) Consider integrating artillery smoke in your plan and use it to initiate the screen to conceal the unit's initial actions.

(12) Commanders may conduct this STX as a countersmoke mission against OPFOR smoke; this training is especially productive if the whole company is training.

(13) React to situations as presented, but remember, your mission is to conceal an area through which a unit will move. The area occupied by the OPFOR is an excellent place to evaluate the effectiveness of the screen.

(14) Conduct an AAR at the conclusion of the STX.

(15) Use the collective tasks in Chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The chemical unit is engaged in combat or combat is imminent. The unit is in direct support of a unit conducting a movement (for example; a maneuver unit conducting a tactical movement or a transportation unit on the MSR). You may also conduct this mission as a deception screen.

b. The trainer-evaluator states the special situation identified in paragraph 5.

5. Special Situation. The following special situation is used to exercise the HQ sections including the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and operations section:

a. The company has received an OPORD from higher HQ (Figure 4-11).

OPERATION ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
OPORD Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
<p>a. Enemy forces. Main elements OPFOR Fifth Army halted temporarily to the _____ enemy trace are _____ to _____. Strength is at 75 percent and morale is high. Disposition is to launch meeting engagement in 24 hours preceded by company-sized airborne and/or airmobile attacks in the division rear in 12 hours. OPFOR Air Force has temporarily achieved air superiority.</p>	

Figure 4-11. Example OPORD for STX D

b. Friendly forces. 52nd ID (Mech) defends division sector DDTTTTMMYY. Due to the vulnerability of the DSA, move them from position noted (see overlay) at _____ under concealment from smoke units of the 42nd Chemical Battalion.

c. Attachments and detachments. 4th Platoon (SG), 34th Chemical Company (Heavy Division) attached to the 60th Chemical Company (SG) effective DDTTTTMMYY.

2. MISSION. 42nd Chemical Battalion (smoke generator units) will provide smoke support to conceal 53rd DISCOM for the DSA movement, vicinity _____, no later than DDTTTTMMYY.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of operations.

(1) 60th Chemical Company (SG) will screen the DSA's movement along route Sierra, vicinity _____. 166th Chemical Company (SG) will provide deception hazes, vicinity _____ and vicinity _____.

(2) 60th Chemical Company (SG) will move to and screen route Sierra no later than DDTTTTMMYY.

(3) 166th Chemical Company (SG) will move to and screen OBJ Susan no later than DDTTTTMMYY.

b. Tasks to subordinate units.

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

(1) Stop smoke on order.

(2) Maintain screen over own units.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

a. Class I: MRE issue until DDMMYY.

b. Class III: MOGAS, diesel, fog oil pickup from DSA by DDTTTTMMYY.

c. Class IX: MSB until DDTTTTMMYY.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command. Commanding officer is located in vicinity _____ until DDTTTTMMYY.

b. Signal. Current SOI is in effect. Commanders monitor the battalion net.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-11. Example OPORD for STX D (continued)

b. Table 4-16 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this STX.

Table 4-16. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for STX D

Event	Task	Estimated Time (Hours)
1	Give a Warning Order to the Designated Smoke Company	0.5
2	Plan and Coordinate Mission Requirements	4
3	Reconnoiter the Mission Area	2
4	Provide for Mission Sustainment	8
5	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		15.5 Hours
NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander and unit leaders train and can evaluate the HQ sections (internal evaluation). If the whole company is training this exercise, additional Os/Cs (if available) are used at the smoke control point and along the smoke line to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. At least one OPFOR member is required to judge the effectiveness of the unit in concealing movement. An OPFOR squad should be used to ambush the company and employ indirect fire against it.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment should consist of communications-electronics operation instructions, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit. Two additional radios with operators to act as higher HQ or the supported units are also required.

d. Maneuver area. The area, ideally, should be large enough to support a battalion task force operation or contain an MSR that may be concealed. The area should also permit relocating, as wind shifts occur, to maintain coverage.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-17.

Table 4-17. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX D

Ammunition	Basic Load
Smoke pot, floating type	2 per generator
Smoke pot, ground type	2 per generator
Other	
MOGAS, diesel, fog oil	

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE E

OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA (AA) AND DEFEND THE UNIT'S PERIMETER

1. Objective. This sample STX trains a chemical company to defend by itself or as part of a larger unit's perimeter. It also provides the commander and other company leaders with realistic training in planning, establishing, and directing unit fires in the defense.

2. Interface. This is a tactical STX. It is used when the unit occupies a portion of a larger unit's perimeter or when it is forced to from its own perimeter.

3. Training. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.

(3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.

b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.

(1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.

(2) Conduct a TEWT or a terrain walk over the STX area.

(3) During the terrain analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Making and the use of strip maps.

(b) Selection and reporting of passage of check points.

(c) Duties of the quartering (advance) party.

- Reconnoiter the route and the AA (including an NBC reconnaissance). Make recommendations for changing the route or AA, if necessary.

- Establish local security.

- Organize the AA. Select sectors for each vehicle, CP location, and OP.

- Mark and improve the entrance, exit, and internal routes in the AA.

- Mark and report or remove mines and obstacles.

- Mark vehicle locations in the AA.

(d) Need for maintaining security on the march and during halts, which consists of--

- Assigning air guards.
- Assigning sectors of responsibility for vehicles on the march.
- Orienting weapons crews on sectors of responsibility during the march.
- Adopting the herringbone or coil formation and posting OPs at all halts.

(e) Actions in the AA.

- Establish a defensive perimeter and coordinate with adjacent units.
- Report personnel status.
- Report vehicle and equipment status.
- Perform operator maintenance and emergency repairs.
- Report supply status and requesting resupply.
- Redistribute supplies and ammunition.
- Perform field sanitation.

(f) Command post and AA security.

- Ensure that the CP is on defensible terrain.
- Ensure that terrain provides the best cover and concealment allowed by radio communications constraints.
- Establish and man a dismount point.
- Park all vehicles not authorized in the CP area at the dismount point.
- Set wire or radio communications with the dismount.
- Identify all vehicles entering the AA as friendly.
- Set up communications between the OPs, the listening posts, and the command post.
- Assign all soldiers to fighting positions on the perimeter.
- Camouflage all AA positions from both ground and aerial observation.
- Ensure that all soldiers know and use the challenge and password.

(g) Stand-to procedures.

- Ensure that all soldiers are alert and in defensive positions at stand-to.
- Account for all equipment.
- Reload vehicles, if necessary.

- Man all defensive positions five minutes prior to stand-to time.
- Ensure that status reports, to include the sensitive item report, are given by unit leaders prior to stand-to.
- Prepare to start all vehicles (on order only) simultaneously at stand-to time.
- Stand-down on order.
- Check all night vision devices, thermal sights, and batteries for serviceability before the evening stand-to.

c. Training enhancers.

- (1) To conduct this exercise, use the FRAGO in the special situation.
- (2) After the chemical staff members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you can train this STX--
 - (a) With moving or stationary elements.
 - (b) With or without OPFOR.
 - (c) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.
 - (d) During both day and night operations.
 - (e) Under varied NBC conditions: single or multiple attacks or combined attacks (NBC).
- (3) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, train in an NBC environment using simulants, or train at night when the training unit is not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options.
- (4) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.
- (5) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.
- (6) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan tactical strategies to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.
- (7) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.
 - (a) Mission. Are we part of a perimeter, or do we defend alone?
 - (b) Enemy. What is the likelihood of an attack? Where, when, and in what strength?

- (c) Terrain and weather. What are the avenues of approach? Key terrain?
 - (d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment?
 - (e) Time available. How much time do my men have to get ready? How much time do we have to get there? How much planning time do I have?
 - (f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?
- (8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact. What to do for air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.
- (9) Designate a quartering party/advance party (operations officer and one individual per platoon and HQ section or per the unit's SOP). The quartering party should reconnaissance routes into and out of the area as well as the perimeter positions of each platoon.
- (10) Link up at the RP. Have the vehicles guided into positions without stopping.
- (11) Establish security.
- (a) Man the OPs.
 - (b) Position weapons and prepare fighting positions.
 - (c) Prepare range cards and fire plans.
 - (d) Use existing material for cover, concealment, and camouflage.
 - (e) Establish wire communications.
- (12) React to situations as presented.
- (13) Keep the following standards in mind:
- (a) Make up the company quartering party from representatives from each platoon and HQ section (the same representatives each time, if possible).
 - (b) Assemble equipment, to include pioneer tools, NBC detection devices, and marking devices. By the time of linkup, all necessary equipment should be with the quartering party personnel.
 - (c) Effect linkup with all representatives present at the appointed time and place.
 - (d) Select a site for each element of the unit providing necessary dispersion and mutual support.
 - (e) Establish initial platoon sectors.
 - (f) Mark entrances, exits, and internal routes and prepare them for the main body's use.
 - (g) Mark obstacles, mines, and booby traps or remove them to allow the main body to enter the AA.
 - (h) Ensure platoon and section representatives mark areas for their platoons so they can guide them to the sites without slowing or halting the elements on the march routes.

(i) Check the area and gather information so the quartering party leader can determine if the area is adequate for an AA. The information gathered must include--

- Security factors, such as the availability of cover and concealment, the enemy situation, and detection of any mines and booby traps in area.
- Movement factors, such as the suitability of the entrances, exits, and internal routes.
- NBC data, such as the type of contamination hazards and the time of stay allowed.
- Terrain data (Is it defensible? Is there sufficient space for dispersion? Is there space for a helicopter-landing zone? Is there sufficient areas that allow for 360 degrees of observation around the AA?)

(j) Move units into the AA using the quartering party guides without slowing or halting on the march route.

(k) Establish primary, alternate, and supplementary positions to cover the entire perimeter. Cover the most dangerous enemy avenues of approach. Maintain the ability to maneuver so as to meet the enemy forces at all points along the perimeter.

(l) Establish communications by laying wires and assigning messengers.

(m) Accomplish planning and preparation for the next mission in the company operations section and command group to include--

- Planning the execution.
- Tasking the organization
- Issuing orders.
- Refueling.
- Rearming.
- Loading for combat.

(n) Perform supply activities to include (as a minimum) resupply of ammunition and POL. Vehicles must have basic loads before combat operations.

(o) Perform maintenance activities, giving priority to maintenance that the unit cannot accomplish during combat support operations.

(p) Maintain weapons.

(q) Care for personnel requirements, to include personnel administration center (PAC) activities, medical needs, food, and rest.

(r) Maintain situation maps and continue planning (operations section).

(14) Conduct an AAR at the conclusion of the STX.

(15) Use the collective tasks in chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The unit is manning its position or a portion of a larger unit's perimeter. Enemy forces can attack in various strengths depending on the battlefield location.

b. The trainer-evaluator states the special situation identified in paragraph 5.

5. Special Situation.

a. The company commander has received an OPORD from higher HQ and issued a FRAGO to his unit (Figure 4-12).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
FRAGO Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
2. MISSION.	
3. EXECUTION.	
a. Concept of operations.	
b. Tasks to subordinate units.	
(1) The company moves at _____ hours to the unit's AA in vicinity grid _____. Closing time no later than _____ hours.	
(2) The (<u>supported unit</u>) occupies the AA at grid _____. Prepare to support combat operations no later than _____ hours. Acknowledge.	
c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.	
4. SERVICE SUPPORT.	
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.	
ACKNOWLEDGE:	
NAME RANK	

Figure 4-12. Sample FRAGO for STX E

b. Table 4-18 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this STX.

Table 4-18. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for STX E

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Give a Warning Order to the Company	0.5
2	Plan and Coordinate Movement Requirements	2
3	Reconnoiter the AA and Routes	2
4	Coordinate for Unit Resupply and Maintenance	1
5	Conduct Unit Resupply, Rearming, and Upload Vehicle Basic Loads	4
6	Plan and Coordinate for the Unit's Next Mission	2
7	Conduct an AAR Upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		12.5 Hours
<p>NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p>		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander and unit leaders train and can evaluate the HQ sections (internal evaluation). If the whole company is training this exercise, additional Os/Cs (if available) are used at the section and platoon level to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. At least one OPFOR member is required to test the perimeter. The OPFOR should expose themselves to the OPs and then attempt to infiltrate the perimeter.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment consist of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit, plus a vehicle to transport the OPFOR element. Two additional radios with operators to act as higher HQ or the supported units are also required

d. Maneuver area. The area, ideally, should be suitable for a company's defense. The area must have defensible terrain, provisions for interlocking fires, adequate cover, and trafficability.

e. Consolidated support requirements. There are no support requirements for this STX.

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE F

PROVIDE CONCEALMENT FOR A BREACHING OPERATION

1. Objective. This sample STX trains a chemical company to plan and conduct hasty and deliberate smoke screens in support of a maneuver or engineer unit's breaching or emplacing obstacles operation. It provides the commander and HQ section leaders with practice in making rapid decisions, supporting platoon operations, and operating with combat units.

2. Interface. This mission enhances tactical mobility and/or survivability. Training this STX in conjunction with an engineer unit's clearing obstacles operation is excellent practice for both units. Usually, obstacle breaching is a coordinated effort. Engineer soldiers emplace or clear the obstacles while concealed by a haze produced by chemical units. Artillery or mortars place high explosives (HE) and smoke on enemy positions to obscure enemy vision and suppress fire. The support unit provides security for the chemical unit and engineers.

3. Training. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussion to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and/or alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.

(3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.

b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.

(1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.

(2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area

(3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the--

(a) Effects of weather and terrain on smoke.

(b) Security—who, what, where, when, why, and how.

(c) Use of indirect fire to provide far-side coverage.

(d) Smoke control points that allow continual observation of the selected area.

(e) Resupply considerations.

(f) Actions to take upon enemy contact.

(4) Become familiar with planning and controlling smoke operations (FM 3-50).

(5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.

(6) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

c. Training enhancers.

(1) To conduct this exercise, use the OPORD given in FTX 1 or train this STX by itself using the OPORD in the special situation.

(2) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and the key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this STX--

(a) With moving or stationary elements.

(b) With or without OPFOR.

(c) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in the summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.

(d) During both day and night operations.

(e) Under varied NBC conditions: single or multiple attacks or combined attacks (NBC).

(3) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, to train in an NBC environment using simulants, or to train at night when the training unit is not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options.

(4) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(5) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.

(6) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan tactical strategies to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.

(7) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.

(a) Mission. What is the size and duration of the screen?

(b) Enemy. What is the threat?

(c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, trafficability, meteorological data, and distance for fog oil resupply?

(d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment?

(e) Time available. When is the mission scheduled to start? What is the transit time for fog oil?

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss actions on contact and what to do for air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.

(9) Be prepared to receive other missions.

(10) Commanders may conduct this STX as a deception to support major unit operations; for example, concealing the absence of movement as well as the presence of a moving unit.

(11) Consider integrating artillery smoke in your plan and use it to initiate the screen to conceal the unit's initial actions.

(12) Commanders may conduct this STX as a countersmoke mission against OPFOR smoke; this training is especially productive if the whole company is training.

(13) React to situations as presented, but remember, your mission is to conceal an area through which a unit will move. The area occupied by the OPFOR is an excellent place to evaluate the effectiveness of the screen.

(14) Conduct an AAR at the conclusion of the STX.

(15) Use the collective tasks in chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The chemical unit is engaged in combat or combat is imminent. The unit is in direct support of a unit conducting a movement (for example, a maneuver unit conducting a tactical movement or a transportation unit on the MSR). You may also conduct this mission as a deception screen.

b. The trainer-evaluator states the special situation identified in paragraph 5.

5. Special Situation. The following special situation is used to exercise the HQ sections, including the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and operations section:

a. The company has received an OPORD from higher HQ (Figure 4-13).

OPERATION ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies
	Issuing headquarters
	Place of issue
	Date-time group of signature
	Message reference number
OPORD Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
<p>a. Enemy forces. The main elements OPFOR Fifth Army halted temporarily to the _____ enemy trace are _____ to _____. Strength is at 75 percent and moral is high. Disposition is to launch meeting engagement in 24 hours preceded by company-sized airborne/airmobile attacks in the division rear in 12 hours. OPFOR Air Force has temporarily achieved air superiority.</p>	

Figure 4-13. Sample OPORD for STX F

b. Friendly forces. 52nd ID (Mech) defends division sector DDTTTTMMYY. Because of the vulnerability of the DSA, move them from the position noted (see overlay) at _____ under concealment from smoke units of the 42nd Chemical Battalion.

c. Attachments and detachments. 4th Platoon (SG), 34th Chemical Company (Heavy Division) is attached to the 60th Chemical Company (SG) effective DDTTTTMMYY.

2. MISSION. 42nd Chemical Battalion (smoke generator units) will provide smoke support to 53rd DISCOM to conceal DSA movement, vicinity _____ no later than DDTTTTMMYY.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of operations. 60th Chemical Company (SG) will screen the DSA's movement along route Sierra, vicinity _____. 166th Chemical Company (SG) will provide deception hazes, vicinity _____ and vicinity _____.

b. Tasks to subordinate units.

(1) 60th Chemical Company (SG) will move to and screen route Sierra no later than DDTTTTMMYY.

(2) 166th Chemical Company (SG) will move to and screen OBJ Susan no later than DDTTTTMMYY.

c. Coordinating instructions: Stop smoke on order; maintain screen over own units. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

a. Class I: MRE issue until DDTMMYY

b. Class III: MOGAS, diesel, fog oil pickup from DSA by DDTTTTMMYY.

c. Class IX: MSB until DDTTTTMMYY.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command. Commanding officer is located in vicinity _____ until DDTTTTMMYY.

b. Signal. Current SOI is in effect. Commanders monitor the battalion net.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-13. Sample OPORD for STX F (continued)

b. Table 4-19 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this STX.

Table 4-19. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for STX F

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Give a Warning Order to the Designated Smoke Company	0.5
2	Plan and Coordinate Mission Requirements	4
3	Reconnoiter the Mission Area	2
4	Provide for Mission Sustainment	8
5	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		15.5 Hours
<p>NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p>		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander and unit leaders train and can evaluate the HQ sections (internal evaluation). If the whole company is training this exercise, additional Os/Cs (if available) are used at the smoke control point and along the smoke line to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. At least one OPFOR member is required to judge the effectiveness of the unit in concealing movement. An OPFOR squad should be used to ambush the company and employ indirect fire against it.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment should consist of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit, plus a vehicle to transport the OPFOR element. Two additional radios with operators to act as higher HQ or the supported units are also required.

d. Maneuver area. The area, ideally, should be large enough to support a battalion task force operation or contain an MSR that may be concealed. The area should also permit relocating, as wind shifts occur, to maintain coverage.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-20.

Table 4-20. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX F

Ammunition	Basic Load
Smoke pot, floating type	2 per generator
Smoke pot, ground type	2 per generator
Other	
MOGAS, diesel gasoline, and fog oil	

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE G

PROVIDE OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION

1. Objective. This sample STX trains a chemical company HQ to plan an operational decontamination for prolonged periods. Almost every contaminated unit can require decontamination support. See FM 3-5 for operational decontamination operations.

2. Interface. This mission is the classic use of decontamination assets. The company plans for organic decontamination platoons to operate an operational decontamination site in the support of a contaminated unit as far forward as the mission permits.

3. Training. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and/or alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.

(3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.

b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.

(1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.

(2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.

(3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the--

(a) Effects of weather and terrain.

(b) Need for maintaining local security.

(c) Selection of the decontamination sites that provide cover and concealment and a passable road network.

(d) Forecasting and planning of decontamination resources.

(e) Coordination for water supply, ADA, MP, EN, and medical support.

(f) Site layout and operations.

(4) Become familiar with planning and controlling operational decontamination operations (FM 3-5).

(5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.

(6) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

c. Training Enhancers.

(1) To conduct this exercise use the OPORD given in FTX 2 or train this STX by itself using the OPORD in the special situation.

(2) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this STX--

(a) With moving or stationary elements.

(b) With or without OPFOR.

(c) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.

(d) During both day and night operations.

(e) Under varied NBC conditions.

(3) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, train in an NBC environment using simulants, or train at night when the training unit is not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options.

(4) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(5) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.

(6) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan tactical strategies to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.

(7) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.

(a) Mission. What sector and type of units need decontamination?

(b) Enemy. What is the threat? What will they do? When, where, and what strength?

(c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, trafficability, and meteorological data?

(d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment?

(e) Time available. When is the mission scheduled to start?

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss actions on contact and what to do for air attacks, how

to handle contamination, and control measures. Ensure that HQ sections are properly exercised in their functional area.

(9) Conduct coordination necessary to ensure defense of the decontamination site.

(10) React to situations as presented, but remember, if the situation prevents or interrupts the operational decontamination, the mission has failed.

(11) Conduct an AAR at the conclusion of the STX.

(12) Use the collective tasks in Chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The chemical unit is engaged in combat and is in direct support of a maneuver unit. Communication is established and you are receiving reports according to the TSOP. The threat force has employed weapons of mass destruction (NBC) in the general vicinity of the maneuver unit's AO.

b. The trainer-evaluator states the special situation identified in paragraph 5.

c. Minimum standards consist of sustaining operational decontamination operations in support of the maneuver unit.

5. Special Situation. The following special situation is used to exercise the HQ sections, including the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and operations section:

a. The company has received a FRAGO from higher HQ (Figure 4-14).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
FRAGO Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
2. MISSION. Provide operational decontamination support to contaminated units of 2nd and 3rd Brigades starting at DDTTMMYY at locations (listed in an annex) to support the division attack. Provide direct support to each brigade with one platoon.	
3. EXECUTION.	
a. Concept of operations.	
b. Tasks to subordinate units.	
c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.	

Figure 4-14. Sample FRAGO for STX G

<p>4. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <p>5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <p>ACKNOWLEDGE:</p> <p style="text-align: center; margin-top: 20px;">NAME RANK</p>

Figure 4-14. Sample FRAGO for STX G (continued)

b. Table 4-21 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this STX.

Table 4-21. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for STX G

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Plan and Coordinate Operational Decontamination Operations	2
2	Reconnoiter Decontamination Site Areas	2
3	Provide for Mission Support	5
4	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		10 Hours
<p>NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p>		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander and unit leaders train and can evaluate the HQ sections (internal evaluation). If the whole company is training this exercise, additional Os/Cs (if available) are used at the decontamination site to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR are not required for the basic STX. If an attack by ground, air, or NBC is included, add the necessary OPFOR.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment consists of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit. Two additional radios with operators to act as higher HQ or the supported units are also required.

d. Maneuver area. The area, ideally, should allow a large area for an operational decontamination site.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This STX requires no support requirements.

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE H

PROVIDE CONCEALMENT FOR A RIVER OPERATION

1. Objective. This sample STX trains a chemical company to plan and supervise one of its most difficult missions. Extensive coordination and planning are required to cross a river. Almost every river crossing will have several dummy sites also screened. The techniques used in either case are identical so as to deceive the OPFOR intelligence. It provides the commander and HQ section leaders with practice in making rapid decisions, supporting platoon operations, and operating with combat units.

2. Interface. This mission enhances tactical mobility and/or survivability and is a classic use of generated smoke. Training this STX in conjunction with an actual crossing is excellent practice. During river operations, the designated crossing-area commander assumes tactical control of smoke operations. After the bridgehead is established, control is relinquished to the unit or commander in charge of the bridgehead. The chemical unit is included as part of the assault team for logistical planning. Since the screen will draw the enemy's attention, deception screens and coverage over areas much larger than the actual crossing site must be used.

3. Training. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and/or alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.

(3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.

b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.

(1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.

(2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.

(3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize the--

(a) Effects of weather and terrain on smoke.

(b) Security--who, where, when, why, what, and how.

(c) Use of floating smoke pots and indirect fire to provide far-side coverage.

(d) Selection of smoke control points that allow continual observation of the selected area.

(e) Resupply considerations.

(f) Actions to take upon enemy contact.

(4) Become familiar with planning and controlling smoke operations (FM 3-50).

(5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.

(6) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

c. Training Enhancers.

(1) To conduct this exercise, use the OPORD given in FTX 1 or train this STX by itself using the OPORD in the special situation.

(2) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this STX--

(a) With moving or stationary elements.

(b) With or without OPFOR.

(c) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.

(d) During both day and night operations.

(e) Under varied NBC conditions.

(3) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, train in an NBC environment using simulants, or train at night when the training unit is not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options.

(4) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(5) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.

(6) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan tactical strategies to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.

(7) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.

(a) Mission. What is the size and duration of the screen?

(b) Enemy. What is the threat? What will they do? When, where, and what strength?

(c) Terrain and weather. What are the available routes, trafficability, meteorological data, and distance for fog oil resupply?

(d) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and equipment?

(e) Time available. When is the mission scheduled to start? What is the transit time for fog oil?

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss actions on contact and what to do for air attacks, refueling procedures, and control measures.

(9) Be prepared to receive other missions.

(10) Commanders may conduct this STX as a deception to support major unit operations (for example, concealing the absence of the river crossing).

(11) Consider integrating artillery smoke into your plan and use it to initiate the screen to conceal the unit's initial actions.

(12) React to situations as presented, but remember, if the situation prevents or interrupts your screen, the mission failed.

(13) Conduct an AAR at the conclusion of the STX.

(14) Use the collective tasks in chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The chemical unit is engaged in combat or combat is imminent. The unit is in direct support of a light unit conducting a river crossing. You may also conduct this mission as a deception screen.

b. The trainer-evaluator states the special situation identified in paragraph 5.

5. Special Situation. The following special situation is used to exercise the HQ sections, including the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and operations section:

a. The company has received an OPORD from higher HQ (Figure 4-15).

OPERATION ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
OPORD Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
a. Enemy forces. Elements of the OPFOR 21st Motorized Rifle Division are defending from _____ to _____. Strength is at 70 percent and the morale is fair. Enemy patrols or harassing attacks are likely.	
b. Friendly forces.	
(1) 11th ID (Light) attacks DDTTTTMMYY to seize higher ground along PL King.	
(2) 2nd Brigade attacks DDTTTTMMYY to seize OBJ Duke.	

Figure 4-15. Sample OPORD for STX H

(3) 3rd Brigade attacks DDTTTTMMYY to seize OBJ Barron.

2. MISSION. 1st Brigade attacks DDTTTTMMYY to seize OBJ Knave.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of operation. Battalions depart AAs, cross the line of departure (LD), conduct river crossing (see Annex B); 2-23 Infantry seizes OBJ Steel, 4-11 Infantry seizes OBJ Lead, and 6-40 Infantry seizes OBJ Copper (see Annex A).

b. Tasks to subordinate units.

(b) 2-23 Infantry.

(c) 4-11 Infantry.

(d) 6-40 Infantry.

(e) Omitted.

(f) 30th Chemical Company (smoke) or (smoke/decontamination) projects a smoke haze to conceal the crossing sites at _____, _____, and _____ (see Annex B) and stops smoke on order.

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

a. Annex G.

b. A/11th Engineer Company draws Class V (breaching munitions) from 1st FSB no later than DDTTTTMMYY.

c. 30th Chemical Company (smoke) or (smoke/decontamination) draws fog oil from division C1 III point no later than DDTTTTMMYY.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command. The brigade commander is initially located with 4-11 Infantry.

b. Signal. SOI Index 4-4 is in effect. Radio-listening silence is effective DDTTTTMMYY.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-15. Sample OPORD for STX H (continued)

b. Table 4-22 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this STX.

Table 4-22. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for STX H

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Give a Warning Order to the Designated Smoke Company	0.5
2	Plan and Coordinate Mission Requirements	4
3	Reconnoiter the Mission Area	2
4	Provide for Mission Sustainment	12
5	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		19.5 Hours
NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander and unit leaders train and can evaluate the HQ sections (internal evaluation). If the whole company is training this exercise, additional Os/Cs (if available) are used at the smoke control site to provide additional feedback.

b. Use OPFOR to deny the crossing site.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment consist of SOI, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit, plus a vehicle to transport the OPFOR element. Two additional radios with operators to act as higher HQ or the supported units are also required.

d. Maneuver area. The area should consist of a stream or river with two or more logical crossing sites with clearance for the production of large-area smoke.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-23.

Table 4-23. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX H

Ammunition	Basic Load
Smoke pot, floating type	2 per generator
Smoke pot, ground type	2 per generator
Other	
MOGAS, diesel gasoline, and fog oil	

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE I

PLAN AND SUPPORT CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE

1. Objective. This sample STX trains a chemical company HQ to plan and support a chemical/biological reconnaissance. See FM 3-19 for reconnaissance operations.

2. Interface. This mission is conducted to gain information on the enemy's chemical/biological threat by determining the presence or absence of contamination in an area. The mission of chemical/biological reconnaissance is to minimize the effects of enemy chemical/biological attacks by detecting, identifying, marking, collecting, and reporting these hazards to higher HQ and supported units.

3. Training. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and position areas.

(3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.

b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.

(1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.

(2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.

(3) During the terrain analysis and walk, emphasize--

(a) What do we want the chemical/biological reconnaissance to do?

(b) Where do we want the chemical/biological reconnaissance?

(c) When do we perform the chemical/biological reconnaissance?

(d) Why are we performing the reconnaissance?

(e) Security--who, what, where, when, and how?

(f) Actions to take on contact with hostile/enemy forces.

(g) Coordination of passage of lines and lateral limits.

(h) Coordination for fire support.

(i) Coordination for resupply.

(j) Coordination for decontamination support and chain of custody requirements for samples.

(4) Become familiar with planning and controlling chemical/biological reconnaissance operations (FM 3-19).

(5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.

(6) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

c. Training enhancers.

(1) To conduct this exercise, use the OPORD given in FTX 3 or train this STX by itself using the FRAGO in the special situation.

(2) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this STX--

(a) With or without OPFOR.

(c) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.

(d) During both day and night operations.

(e) Under varied NBC conditions.

(3) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, train in an NBC environment using simulants, or train at night when the training unit is not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options.

(4) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(5) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.

(6) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan tactical strategies to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.

(7) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.

(a) Mission. Is the mission a zone, area, or route reconnaissance? What assets are required to perform the mission?

(b) Enemy. Information on the chemical threat is obtained from intelligence estimates. This information may expand or restrict the types or forms of agents that require testing and the time needed to complete the mission may increase or decrease.

(c) Terrain and weather. Terrain may dictate which reconnaissance technique is used, either mounted or dismounted. Open, trafficable areas lend themselves to mounted operations, while urban, jungle, or otherwise restricted terrain is better handled dismounted for reconnaissance.

(d) Troops and equipment. Reconnaissance assets available will influence the number of vehicles (Fox, M113, or HMMWV) or teams used on a particular mission. Other missions may have assets tied up already, so mission planners will determine whether available assets can accomplish the mission.

(e) Time available. The time required to complete the mission may dictate the size of the area that requires reconnoitering, or it may restrict the number of points samples are taken.

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact and what to do for air attacks, how to handle contamination, and control measures. Ensure that the HQ sections are properly exercised in their functional areas.

(9) Conduct an AAR at the conclusion of the STX.

(10) Use the collective tasks in chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The chemical unit is engaged in combat and is tasked to provide direct support to a division conducting the main attack. Communication is established and you are receiving reports according to the TSOP. The threat force has employed weapons of mass destruction (NBC) in the maneuver unit's AO.

b. The trainer-evaluator states the special situation identified in paragraph 5.

5. Special Situation. The following special situation is used to exercise the HQ sections, including the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and operations section:

a. The company has received a FRAGO from the division chemical officer (Figure 4-16).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
FRAGO Number: _____	
References:	
1. SITUATION.	
2. MISSION. ___ Chemical Company is tasked to provide a (zone/area/route) reconnaissance in the vicinity of _____ no later than DDTTMMYY to determine the presence of suspected (chemical, biological) contamination. Report the location of contamination immediately.	
3. EXECUTION.	
a. Concept of operations.	

Figure 4-16. Sample FRAGO for STX I

b. Tasks to subordinate units.

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND CONTROL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-16. Sample FRAGO for STX I (continued)

b. Table 4-24 shows the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this STX.

Table 4-24. Sequence of Events and Time Allocation for STX I

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Plan and Coordinate the Reconnaissance Operation	2
2	Reconnoiter the Reconnaissance Area	2
3	Provide for Mission Support	5
4	Conduct an AAR upon Mission Completion	1
Total Time:		10 Hours
<p>NOTE: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on the factors of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p>		

6. Support Requirement.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The commander and unit leaders train and can evaluate the HQ sections (internal evaluation). If the whole company is training this exercise, additional Os/Cs (if available) are used with the reconnaissance assets to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. The OPFOR is required to employ indirect fire against each platoon or reconnaissance team.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment consist of SOIs, organic vehicles and communications equipment assigned to the chemical unit, plus a vehicle to transport the OPFOR element. Two additional radios with operators to act as higher HQ or the supported units are also required.

d. Maneuver area. This exercise requires additional training MOPP gear for conducting an operational/thorough decontamination operation as required upon completion of the reconnaissance mission.

e. Consolidated support requirements. No support requirements are needed for this exercise.

7. T&EO Sequence. Chapter 3, Table 3-3, lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that support this exercise.

SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE J

PLAN AND SUPPORT RADIOLOGICAL RECONNAISSANCE

1. Objective. This sample STX trains a chemical company HQ to plan and support a radiological reconnaissance. See FM 3-19 for reconnaissance operations.
2. Interface. This mission is conducted to gain information on the radiation threat by determining the presence or absence of contamination in an area. The mission of radiological reconnaissance is to minimize the effects of enemy nuclear attacks by detecting, identifying, marking, collecting, and reporting these hazards to higher HQ and supported units.
3. Training. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.
 - a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--
 - (1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and implement the unit's SOP.
 - (2) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and identifying decontamination sites.
 - (3) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of miniature training areas to be used to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations while rehearsing the exercise.
 - b. Training tips. The following paragraphs provide tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX.
 - (1) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercise.
 - (2) Conduct a terrain walk with unit personnel over the mission area.
 - (3) During the mission analysis emphasize--
 - (a) What do we want the radiological reconnaissance to do?
 - (b) Where do we want the radiological reconnaissance?
 - (c) When do we perform the radiological reconnaissance?
 - (d) Why are we performing the reconnaissance?
 - (e) Security--who, what, where, when, and how?
 - (f) Actions to take on contact with hostile/enemy forces.
 - (g) Coordination of passage of lines and lateral limits.
 - (h) Coordination for fire support.
 - (i) Coordination for resupply, medical support, and decontamination support as required.
 - (4) Become familiar with planning and controlling chemical/biological reconnaissance operations (FM 3-19).

- (5) Obtain a weather forecast for the area.
- (6) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

c. Training enhancers.

(1) To conduct this exercise, use the OPORD given in FTX 3 or train this STX by itself using the OPORD in the special situation.

(2) After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leaders tasks, you can then train this STX--

(a) With or without OPFOR.

(b) Under varied environmental conditions, such as in summer or winter months and in desert, mountainous, or jungle areas.

(c) During both day and night operations.

(d) Under varied NBC conditions.

(3) The training exercise is tailored to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. It is not practical to employ an OPFOR element, train in an NBC environment using simulants, or train at night when the training unit is not proficient in those areas of training. The trainer must build on the basics before attempting to train on the more complex options.

(4) During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in Chapter 3. If the training unit meets the standards during the initial phases of training, the unit must maintain those training standards as the training conditions and environments become more realistic.

(5) When the training unit becomes proficient in this STX, it must maintain that level of proficiency by executing this STX as part of CFXs or FTXs.

(6) When using simulations, the O/C must monitor all training actions. Simulators and intelligence are vital elements in the training process. During the early stages of training, the training unit must understand the tactics and planning norms of potential adversary. This understanding is necessary to plan tactical strategies to defeat the threat or protect friendly forces. When the training unit performs at an acceptable level of proficiency, employ simulants and/or intelligence to add realism and to reinforce the element's training posture.

(7) Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.

(a) Mission. Is the mission a zone, area, or route reconnaissance? What assets are required to perform the mission?

(b) Enemy. Information on the nuclear threat is obtained from intelligence estimates. This information may increase or decrease time required to complete the mission based on the situation.

(c) Terrain and weather. Terrain may dictate which reconnaissance technique is used, either mounted or dismounted. Open, trafficable areas lend themselves to mounted operations, while urban, jungle, or otherwise restricted terrain is better handled dismounted for reconnaissance.

(d) Troops and equipment. Reconnaissance assets available will influence the number of vehicles (Fox, M113, or HMMWV) or teams used on a particular mission. Other missions may have assets tied up already, so mission planners will determine whether assets available can accomplish the mission.

(e) Time available. The time required to complete the mission may dictate the size of the area that requires reconnoitering, or it may restrict the number of points at which radiological readings are taken.

(f) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

(8) The commander briefs unit leaders. Ensure that they understand by asking questions and having individuals describe their actions. Discuss action on contact, what to do for air attacks, how to handle contamination, and control measures. Ensure that the HQ sections are properly exercised in their functional areas.

(9) Conduct an AAR at the conclusion of this STX.

(10) Use the collective tasks in chapter 3 to build the scenario.

4. General Situation.

a. The chemical unit is engaged in combat and is tasked to provide direct support to a division defending a portion of the corps sector. Communication is established and you are receiving reports according to the TSOP. The threat force has employed weapons of mass destruction (NBC) in the division's AO.

b. The trainer-evaluator states the special situation identified in paragraph 5.

5. Special Situation. The following special situation is used to exercise the HQ sections, including the commander, operations officer, first sergeant, and operations section:

a. The company has received a FRAGO from the division chemical officer (Figure 4-17).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER	
	Copy ___ of ___ copies Issuing headquarters Place of issue Date-time group of signature Message reference number
FRAGO Number: _____ References:	
1. SITUATION.	
2. MISSION. ___ Chemical Company is tasked to provide a (zone/area/route) reconnaissance in the vicinity of _____ no later than DDTTMMYY to determine the presence of radiological contamination. Immediately report readings of 1 cGy per hour or higher.	
3. EXECUTION.	
a. Concept of operation.	
b. Tasks to subordinate units.	
c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.	

Figure 4-17. Sample FRAGO for STX J

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

5-1. Introduction. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines, T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. They are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

- a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.
- b. Task. This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.
- c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, do not underline the reference.
- d. Iteration. Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP 4.
- e. Commander/Leader Assessment. The unit's leadership uses this to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and subunit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:
 - (1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
 - (2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
 - (3) U - Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.
- f. Condition. A statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.
- g. Task standard.
 - (1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier.
 - (2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the

METT-TC conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO." It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO." It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, task number, and task title.

l. Opposing Forces Tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished--not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

Develop Intelligence

Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon) (34-6-2010.03-0203).....5-4
 Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-3-C232.03-1019).....5-6
 Plan and Initiate the Operations Security (OPSEC) Program (03-2-3012).....5-9
 Implement Information Security Procedures (34-5-C501.03-1015).....5-11

Deploy/Conduct Maneuver

Prepare the Unit for a Nontactical Move (03-3-0005).....5-14
 Conduct a Nontactical Road March (03-3-0006).....5-17
 Perform a Tactical Road March (07-3-C227.03-1004).....5-20
 Conduct a Convoy (55-2-C324.03-2102).....5-23
 Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-C331.03-5002).....5-27

Protect the Force

Secure and Defend the Unit's Position (03-2-3006).....5-30
 Conduct Thorough Decontamination Operations (03-2-C312).....5-34
 Employ Physical Security Measures (03-3-0016).....5-40
 Plan the Employment of a Biological Detection (BD) Platoon (03-3-0018).....5-42
 Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201).....5-45
 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202).....5-48
 Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203).....5-50
 Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205).....5-53
 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206).....5-55

Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208).....	5-57
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209)	5-59
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222).....	5-61
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223)	5-63
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224).....	5-66
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226).....	5-70
Prepare for a Biological Attack (03-4-0018).....	5-73
Respond to a Biological Attack (03-4-0019)	5-75
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-3-0210.03-1001).....	5-77
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-C337.03-1037).....	5-80
Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008)	5-82
Perform CSS and Sustainment	
Conduct Biological Defense Planning (03-2-7003).....	5-85
Plan and Coordinate Unit Deployment (03-3-0001).....	5-89
Prepare for and Conduct Rail Deployment (03-3-0002)	5-91
Prepare for and Conduct Air Deployment (03-3-0003).....	5-93
Prepare for and Conduct Sea Deployment (03-3-0004).....	5-95
Perform Preventive-Medicine Measures (03-3-0037).....	5-97
Treat Casualties (08-2-0003.03-00CT).....	5-99
Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-C319.03-1319).....	5-103
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.03-1014).....	5-105
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Company) (19-3-3105.03-2305).....	5-108
Transport Casualties (08-2-C316.03-00CT)	5-110
Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-C318.03-1008).....	5-113
Provide Administrative Support (03-2-3016).....	5-115
Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-C320.03-1009).....	5-117
Perform Unit-Level Maintenance (43-2-C322.03-1016).....	5-119
Draw Equipment from the Pre-Positioned Materiel Configured to Unit Sets (POMCUS) Stocks (03-3-3023).....	5-123
Exercise Command and Control	
Plan Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System (03-2-7001)....	5-124
Establish a Command Post (03-3-0007).....	5-127
Issue an Operation Order (OPORD) (03-3-0008).....	5-129
Prepare for Operations (03-3-0009).....	5-131
Establish Wire Communications (03-3-0013)	5-134
Conduct Smoke Operations (03-3-1003).....	5-137
Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-3-C231.03-1031).....	5-139
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-2-C302.03-1010).....	5-141
Plan Thorough Decontamination Operations (03-2-3010).....	5-143
Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-C338.03-1012).....	5-145
Maintain Company Strength (12-2-C321.03-1011).....	5-148

Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs

ELEMENTS: REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 BIDS TEAMS
 DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER

TASK: Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon) (34-6-2010.03-0203)
 (FM 34-3) (FM 101-5) (FM 34-1)
 (FM 34-10) (FM 34-130) (FM 34-2)
 (FM 34-8) (FM 34-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Given the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and combat information and intelligence, unit leaders maintain an updated situation map (SITMAP) with all reported and current enemy locations or dispositions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The current enemy situation is updated by unit leaders on their SITMAPs and assessed for unforeseen or newly developing risks or vulnerabilities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives the commander's priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) and information requirements (IRs).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Merged significant aspects of the area of operations (AO) and the current enemy situation. b. Used the PIR and the IR to analyze the current enemy situation. c. Analyzed and compared the enemy's current dispositions and compositions with the projected course of action (COA). d. Confirmed or denied COAs and updated the enemy situation based on current intelligence and intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products. e. Tracked the status of the latest time information is of value (LTIOV) for each PIR. <p>2. The element maintains the SITMAP, information displays, and journals as required by the unit's TSOP.</p> <p>3. The element maintains the SITMAP, as required by the TSOP, focusing on the PIR and the IR.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included the enemy situation and locations. b. Portrayed the enemy situation and locations. c. Included the general friendly situation. d. Included enemy capabilities and vulnerabilities. e. Included the prioritized COAs and the probable future intent. f. Included significant events. g. Portrayed the front line trace and monitored the friendly situation. h. Listed recent significant events and indicators of future events. i. Communicated the intent and the impact to the Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2) or the Intelligence Officer (US Army) S2 (S2). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-3-C232.03-1019)
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 20-3)
 (FM 3-19.30) (FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is operating where it can be detected by the enemy. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance units. The enemy can use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, and intentions. The element prevents the enemy from learning any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI). The element prevents the enemy from surprising its main body.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader implements OPSEC protective measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that OPSEC measures were properly implemented. b. Ensured that OPSEC was integrated into all operations and activities. c. Maintained awareness of all activities that were OPSEC sensitive. * 2. Leaders check or perform information security measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Controlled information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians, as applicable. c. Conducted alert, deployment preparation, and loading to minimize detection. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Ensured that maps contained only minimum-essential information. e. Inspected and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in personal material such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs. f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure. <p>3. The element performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used natural concealment and camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation. b. Moved on covered and concealed routes. c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick. d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings. <p>4. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles and crew-served weapons to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that foliage near their positions was not stripped. b. Camouflaged earth berms. c. Ensured that camouflage nets, if used, were hung properly. d. Avoided crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads, where possible. e. Erased any tracks leading to the positions. f. Ensured that vehicles parked in shadows were moved as the shadows shifted. g. Replaced and replenished camouflage as needed. h. Avoided movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection. <p>5. The element's net control station (NCS) enforces communications procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) procedures (challenge, authentication and decode, call signs, and frequencies). b. Enforced approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures. c. Enforced communications security (COMSEC) procedures (used short transmissions, the lowest power settings possible, and directional antennas; avoided transmission patterns; and maintained radio silence), as directed. <p>6. Elements employ COMSEC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used SOI procedures (challenge, authentication and decode, call signs, and frequencies). b. Used approved RATELO procedures. c. Used COMSEC procedures (used short transmissions, the lowest power setting possible, directional antennas; avoided transmission patterns; and maintained radio silence), as directed. d. Employed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM) procedures for operations during jamming. e. Used messengers and wire to the maximum extent. f. Used visual signals according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). <p>7. The company employs physical security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established observation posts (OPs). b. Used counterreconnaissance patrols. c. Employed stand-to procedures. d. Emplaced mines and obstacles. e. Tied in with adjacent units (coordination and fire). f. Used the correct challenge and password. g. Limited access to the element's area. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. i. Employed air guards. j. Used noise and light discipline. k. Used proper litter discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
113-573-6001	RECOGNIZE ELECTRONIC COUNTERMEASURES AND IMPLEMENT ELECTRONIC COUNTER-COUNTERMEASURE (ECCM)	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Plan and Initiate the Operations Security (OPSEC) Program (03-2-3012)
 (FM 34-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is conducting mission activities and preparing for deployment in support of combat operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit establishes and enforces countermeasures needed to prevent the enemy from acquiring intelligence about the company's operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The commander determines ongoing unit activities that provide opportunities for the enemy to collect intelligence, to include-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Electronic transmissions from the communications equipment. b. Aerial and ground photography, including heat and infrared radiation. c. Human intelligence gathered by the agents and the reconnaissance patrols. d. Operations patterns, such as the standing operating procedure (SOP) that, if observed, would permit the enemy to predict friendly intentions. * 2. The commander implements OPSEC measures to deny the enemy intelligence information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined weaknesses in communications, logistics, operations, and administrative activities. b. Unit leaders monitored unit patterns, activity signatures (identification by unique sound and imagery or electromagnetic display), and operations "profiles" (how things were conducted) and corrected avoidable displays of patterns, signatures, and profiles. For example, before an attack, communications increased; however, just before the attack, they ceased. * 3. Company leaders initiate countermeasures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used deception plans to mislead the enemy of friendly intentions. For example, prepared false positions and moved at night under vehicle blackout. b. Employed information security that prevented disclosure of operational information. For example, passed information to others only on a need-to-know basis (while still keeping soldiers adequately informed) and ensured the proper maintenance of classified information. c. Maintained physical security that limited or denied the enemy access to persons and things. For example, established observation posts (OPs), kept soldiers alert on the perimeter, and used challenge and password procedures. d. Implemented signal security to protect communications. For example, established and enforced radio silence and communications security (COMSEC) procedures and used messengers when possible. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Implement Information Security Procedures (34-5-C501.03-1015)
 (AR 380-5) (AR 380-10) (AR 380-15)
 (AR 380-19) (AR 380-49) (AR 380-67)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit appoints a security manager who is knowledgeable in the Army's security program. The security manager will have direct and ready access to the commander on security matters. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Classified information is protected 100 percent of the time and access is denied to the threat.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The unit implements an effective security program that includes initial, refresher, termination, and special briefings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that all personnel authorized access received security training. b. Provided an initial security briefing. c. Required personnel to sign a classified nondisclosure agreement before granting them access to the classified information. d. Advised personnel of the adverse effects from unauthorized disclosure and their personal, moral, and legal responsibilities for protecting classified information. e. Indoctrinated personnel in the principles, criteria, and procedures for protecting, classifying, downgrading, declassifying, marking, controlling, accounting for, storing, destroying, and transmitting classified information. f. Advised personnel to refrain from discussing classified information at home, in uncleared public facilities, or on the telephone. g. Advised personnel of the penalties for engaging in espionage activities. h. Informed personnel of proper methods and channels for reporting matters of security interest. i. Provided security termination briefings to all cleared personnel upon termination of employment, administrative withdrawal of security clearance, or contemplated absence from duty or employment for 60 days or more. j. Gave special briefings to those personnel authorized to hand carry or escort classified material before their being granted access to special access programs, sensitive compartmented access, North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), or other special categories of information. <p>NOTE: As an integral part of the security program, the security manager (1) ensures that current security classification guides are on hand, (2) conducts security inspections, (3) ensures that the destruction equipment and security containers meet standards, and (4) exercises the emergency destruction plan periodically.</p> <p>2. The element ensures that all cleared personnel are aware of proper security procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prevented unauthorized persons from gaining access to classified material. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Ensured that the appropriate cover sheets (Standard Form [SF] 703, SF 704, or SF 705) were placed on classified information that was removed from storage.</p> <p>c. Applied necessary markings to classified material at the time of classification, to include overall page markings, portion markings, classification authority shown on the "Classified By" line, downgrading, and declassification markings.</p> <p>d. Ensured that all classified material was protected when removed from storage.</p> <p>NOTE: Unit members ensure one of the following methods is used when uncleared personnel enter the work area: (1) Place face down all classified material that can be viewed by uncleared personnel. (2) Cover any classified material that can be viewed by uncleared personnel. (3) Place classified material in a General Services Administration (GSA) approved or equivalent security container. (4) Ensure that uncleared visitors do not hear classified discussions.</p> <p>3. Unit members use the proper security procedures when departing their workstation temporarily.</p> <p>a. Gave the classified material to a properly cleared individual who had a need-to-know.</p> <p>b. Secured the classified material in an approved security container.</p> <p>4. Unit members safeguard classified information when transmitting or transporting it to prevent compromise and unauthorized access.</p> <p>a. Double wrapped classified material in opaque envelopes or similar wrapping.</p> <p>b. Ensured that classified material was not displayed in public places while transporting.</p> <p>c. Prevented the storage of classified material in any detachable storage compartment (such as automobile trailers or luggage racks) while transporting.</p> <p>d. Maintained constant observation of the classified package during transportation.</p> <p>e. Transmitted classified material only by authorized couriers or other approved means.</p> <p>f. Obtained a receipt (Department of the Army [DA] Form 3964 or other applicable form) for all TOP SECRET and SECRET material transmitted to government agencies and all classified material transmitted to contractors.</p> <p>5. Unit members use proper procedures when presenting a classified briefing.</p> <p>a. Ensured that the briefing area was cleared to the highest level of material to be discussed.</p> <p>b. Checked the attendance roster to ensure that all personnel were cleared and had a need-to-know.</p> <p>c. Established a sign-in roster at the main entrance to the briefing area and controlled access at all other entrances.</p> <p>d. Ensured that all training aids were marked with security classification according to their content.</p> <p>e. Informed the audience at the beginning of the security briefing of the classification of the briefing and the policy concerning note taking.</p> <p>f. Repeated the security classification at the end of the briefing.</p> <p>6. Unit members secure all classified material in proper, secure storage containers.</p> <p>a. Placed all classified material, to include typewriter ribbons, computer disks, notes, and similar material in an approved GSA security container.</p> <p>b. Locked the security container.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Wrote the date, the time, and their initials in the appropriate block of SF 702. d. Had another person check the container to make sure it was locked and initial the SF 702. e. Turned the OPEN/CLOSED sign located on the front of the security container to the CLOSED or LOCKED position. 7. Unit members safeguard classified information when discovering a security container open and unattended. a. Kept the container under guard or surveillance. b. Notified one of the persons listed on the SF 700 affixed to the container. 8. Unit members ensure unattended classified documents are safeguarded. a. Took custody of the classified material. b. Protected the material to prevent unauthorized access. c. Notified the security manager. 9. Unit members properly destroy classified material when required. a. Ensured that the proper destruction equipment met the standards. b. Ensured that two properly cleared individuals witnessed and signed the destruction certificate for all TOP SECRET and NATO SECRET material. c. Ensured that all other classified material was properly destroyed by at least one properly cleared individual (destruction certificates are not required) and that sensitive unclassified material was destroyed to preclude reconstruction or recognition.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare the Unit for a Nontactical Move (03-3-0005)
 (FM 55-30) (DOD REG 4500.9-R) (FM 55-9)
 (FM 7-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a movement directive to move to an aerial port of embarkation (APOE) or a sea port of embarkation (SPOE) for deployment to an outside continental United States (OCONUS) site or redeployment to its continental United States (CONUS) home station. Routes, scheduled halts, and logistics and administrative support are available according to the movement plan.

The unit has an advanced party at the APOE, the SPOE, the tactical assembly area (TAA), or the rear assembly area (RAA), and the advance party has conducted a route reconnaissance. The march commander has been designated. Security for the move has been coordinated. The movement directive, the movement plan, the port call message, load plans, and strip maps are available. Vehicles are loaded and in the unit movement area (UMA). The unit has a trained noncommissioned officer (NCO) appointed as the unit movement NCO (UMNCO). The unit is deployed as part of a larger force. Preparation for the movement is performed day or night under all environmental conditions.

NOTE: This task is used four times during the field training exercise (FTX). During deployment, it is used for the nontactical road march from the home station to the APOE or SPOE. During redeployment, it is used for the movement from the area of operations (AO) to the TAA or RAA, from the TAA or RAA to the APOE or SPOE, and from the aerial port of debarkation (APOD) or sea port of debarkation (SPOD) to the home station. This task should not be trained in MOPPA.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit is ready to cross the start point (SP) no later than the time prescribed in the movement directive.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit commander, the platoon leader, or the designated UMNCO supervises the preparation for movement to the APOE, the SPOE, the TAA, the RAA, or the home station. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with higher headquarters's (HQ) operations or administration section to verify movement plan information for accuracy. b. Computed the travel time and the distance from the proposed SP to the release point (RP). c. Compared the travel time and the start time to verify that the unit would arrive at the APOE or SPOE according to the port call message. d. Inspected vehicles and equipment for proper markings and military shipping labels according to the movement plan, applicable field manuals (FMs), and current instructions. e. Notified higher HQ's operations or administration section that the unit was ready to move. f. Briefed the commander and higher HQ on the preparations for movement. 2. The unit dismantles the current operating site (redeployment).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Struck tentage and camouflage nets, if available, according to applicable technical manuals (TMs) and within the time specified in the displacement plan. b. Loaded all designated equipment according to the unit's load plans and within the time specified in the displacement plan. c. Dismantled wire communications, antennas, generators, and power cables within the time specified in the displacement plan. <p>3. The unit prepares vehicles and equipment for movement to the APOE, the SPOE, the TAA, the RAA, or the home station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed before-operations preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all vehicles and equipment. b. Corrected maintenance discrepancies within the operator's capabilities according to applicable TMs. c. Reported all maintenance deficiencies beyond the operator's capability to the immediate supervisor. d. Corrected loading deficiencies according to the load plan, if necessary. e. Recomputed the vehicle's center of gravity, if necessary (APOE only). f. Remarketed the vehicle's center of gravity, if necessary (APOE only). g. Marked vehicles for movement to the APOE or the SPOE according to the applicable FMs, the movement order, and the UMNCO's instructions. h. Placed military shipping labels on the vehicles and equipment according to the movement plan and the UMNCO's instructions. <p>* 4. The march commander and unit leaders organize the convoy for the movement to the APOE, the SPOE, the TAA, the RAA, or the home station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned vehicle positions with the heavier, slower vehicles placed first. b. Assigned control vehicles. c. Coordinated with the supporting direct support (DS) maintenance section for sufficient or an additional number of recovery vehicles and mechanics to support the trail party element. d. Provided the vehicle position listing with the location of all vehicles to the trail party leader. e. Opened radio nets as specified in the movement plan. <p>* 5. The march commander and unit leaders conduct premovement inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected personnel and equipment for compliance with the movement directive or the movement plan. b. Inspected organizational equipment for accountability and serviceability. c. Inspected vehicles and trailers and their loads for serviceability, proper stowing, and security. d. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to the unit and higher HQ's operations or administration section. <p>* 6. The march commander conducts briefings for convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver. b. Briefed the convoy's chain of command. c. Conveyed the convoy's route. d. Prescribed the rate of march and catch-up speeds. e. Established vehicle intervals. f. Identified on maps, strip maps, or overlays the location of scheduled halts. g. Briefed on safety, accident, and breakdown procedures. h. Identified the location of medical support, if required. i. Identified the location of maintenance support. j. Provided the location and the identification of the destination. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
k. Briefed key members and leaders on arm and hand signals, radio frequencies, and call signs. 7. The unit prepares to cross the SP. a. Staged vehicles for the convoy according to the march commander's instructions. b. Notified the march commander that vehicles were ready to cross the SP for convoy to the APOE, the SPOE, the TAA, the RAA, or the home station.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
03-9007.01-0020	Give Briefings	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3304.01-0002	Conduct Inspection	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct a Nontactical Road March (03-3-0006)
 (FM 55-30)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is required to conduct a nontactical move en route to occupy a forward assembly area (FAA) for final preparation. The time specified to cross the start point (SP) for the convoy to the aerial port of embarkation (APOE) or the sea port of embarkation (SPOE), the tactical assembly area (TAA) or the rear assembly area (RAA), or the home station has arrived.

All equipment to be moved by convoy is loaded and vehicles are positioned for departure. The march route is identified and has been traveled by a reconnaissance party. All weight, height, and width restrictions along the march route have been verified. Coordination for rest stops, remain overnight (RON) facilities, and personnel and maintenance support has been accomplished. A security element has been assigned. The RP is within the APOE or SPOE, the TAA or RAA, or home station marshalling area (MA). Convoy operations may be performed during daylight or darkness. Radio and visual signals are used for march column control. The movement plan and the deployment operation order (OPORD) are available. A map and overlays with the SP, checkpoints (CPs), critical points, and the RP are available. The column may conduct halts during the movement.

NOTE: This task may be used during the initiation of a field training exercise (FTX). During deployment, it is used for the nontactical road march from the home station to the APOE or SPOE. During redeployment, it is used for movement from the area of operations (AO) to the TAA or RAA, from the TAA or RAA to the APOE or SPOE, and from the aerial port of debarkation (APOD) or sea port of debarkation (SPOD) to the home station. This task should not be trained in MOPPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit must cross the SP, CPs, and the RP according to the times specified in the movement plan or the times adjusted on the road movement table by the march commander. The unit must maintain appropriate vehicle intervals and maintain radio contact with the road march commander at all times during the march. The unit leader must report to higher headquarters (HQ) upon completion of the road march.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The march commander initiates the convoy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed the lead vehicle to cross the SP at the specified time. b. Verified that vehicles had crossed the SP. c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the higher HQ's operations or administration section when unit elements had crossed the SP. * 2. The march commander reports convoy information to the higher HQ's operations or administration section. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forwarded the CP clearance reports as CPs were crossed. b. Employed current signal operation instructions (SOI) or standing signal instructions (SSI) codes in all transmissions. * 3. The march commander enforces march discipline.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Placed directional guides at all critical intersections along the route, if necessary. b. Assumed positions along the march route that provided command presence at critical turns or other points of decision. c. Enforced all movement policies defined in the movement plan with emphasis on formations, distances, speed, passing procedures, and halts. d. Adjusted formation distances and speed consistent with roads and speed limits. e. Enforced security measures to protect equipment and cargo during halts. f. Communicated to unit leaders and operators, by radio or proper visual signals, any violations of march discipline or changes to current orders. <p>4. The unit employs march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the designated march speed specified in the movement plan or as prescribed by the march commander. b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals as specified in the movement plan or as adjusted by the march commander. c. Obeyed vehicle driving regulations and safe-driving procedures based on conditions. d. Crossed all CPs as scheduled. e. Reacted correctly to the march commander's arm and hand signals. <p>5. The unit conducts scheduled halts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time and location. b. Reported scheduled halts to the higher HQ's operations or administration section, if appropriate. c. Performed during-operations preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles (operators). d. Inspected vehicle loads for safety and security. e. Began departure at the specified time in the movement plan or at the march commander's instructions. f. Reported the resumption of the march to the higher HQ's operations or administration section, if appropriate. <p>6. The unit conducts unscheduled halts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerted the march column with the prescribed arm and hand signals. b. Reported the halt and circumstances to the higher HQ's operations or administration section, if appropriate. c. Resumed the march as soon as the reason for the halt was rectified. d. Reported the resumption of the march to the higher HQ's operations or administration section, if appropriate. <p>* 7. The march commander monitors the unit crossing the RP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified that the lead vehicle crossed the RP at the specified time. b. Verified that all vehicles crossed the RP. c. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the higher HQ's operations or administration section. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 NBC RECON PLT HQ
 3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 RECON PLATOON HQ
 4 RECON SQUADS
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 RECON PLATOON
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 RECON PLT 3 SQDS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 3 RECON PLT HQ
 12 RECON SQUADS
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS
 Company

TASK: Perform a Tactical Road March (07-3-C227.03-1004)
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted, employ indirect fires, or employ air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation unless required otherwise by enemy action or by direction of the higher headquarters, and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The leader issues a warning order to subordinate leaders. a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Gave the warning order immediately after being alerted for the mission. c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued. d. Addressed items not covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). e. Stated the location and the time to issue the OPORD. <p>* 2. The leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, the weather, and visibility conditions. b. Identified the route, the SP, the RP, critical points, and other control measures. c. Provided organization for the movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units. d. Provided security tasks to subordinate elements to include all-around security and air guard coverage for the entire element. e. Addressed contingencies for action on enemy contact. <p>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to enemy ambush; indirect fire; an air attack; a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Provided load guides to the soldiers. g. Briefed back the plans of subordinate leaders. <p>3. The element conducts necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special issue items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected personnel and vehicles for the proper load, equipment, and readiness to move. b. Completed a communications check and reported the readiness to move. <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crossed the SP at the designated time. b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the march rate specified in the order or the unit's SOP. c. Followed the prescribed route. <p>5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained all-around observation at all times to include air guards. b. Oriented as directed to establish the unit's local security. <p>6. The element reports and reacts to enemy contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported and reacted according to the directions in the OPORD. b. Reported and reacted according to the unit's SOP. <p>7. The element halts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted halts at regular intervals according to the unit's SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene. b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security. c. Reported all halts to the next higher headquarters (HQ). d. Positioned vehicles in a herringbone formation. e. Dismounted the personnel to provide local security. f. Checked the condition of personnel and equipment. g. Coordinated with the adjacent unit. h. Reported status to higher HQ. <p>* 8. The leader controls the unit.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used visual, messenger, or radio signals for control throughout the movement. b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order. c. Used or modified control measures from the order, as needed. 9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order. a. Met the quartering party guide, if designated. b. Passed through the RP without halting. c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1003	DETERMINE A MAGNETIC AZIMUTH USING A LENSATIC COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1012	ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1018	DETERMINE DIRECTION WITHOUT A COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Conduct a Convoy (55-2-C324.03-2102)
(FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Upon receipt of an operation order (OPORD), the element moves to a new location given in the OPORD and conducts operations at that location. Threat patrols up to platoon and company size have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company's standing operating procedure (SOP) with movement readiness levels and current loading plans is available. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. Time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The convoy commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the start point (SP). b. Identified locations of friendly units. c. Identified potential ambush sites. d. Identified checkpoints (CPs). e. Identified sites for scheduled halts. f. Identified the release point (RP). 2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Wore the designated MOPP gear. b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm. c. Monitored radiation monitoring devices. d. Verified map information. e. Listed the capacity of bridges and underpasses. f. Listed the location of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites. g. Prepared the map overlay. h. Computed the travel time. i. Prepared the strip map. * 3. The convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters (HQ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated for military police (MP) support. b. Coordinated for medical support. c. Coordinated for fire support. d. Coordinated for engineer support. e. Coordinated for maintenance contact-team support. f. Coordinated additional requirements. 4. The unit prepares vehicles and equipment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). b. Corrected minor deficiencies. c. Reported major deficiencies. d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials. e. Covered unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel. f. Covered or removed reflective surfaces. g. Placed antennas at their lowest height. h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting consistent with operational requirements. <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned cargo vehicle positions. b. Assigned control vehicles without setting a pattern. c. Assigned recovery vehicle positions. d. Assigned hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy. e. Assigned passenger locations. f. Assigned air guards. g. Organized the trail party element. h. Provided vehicle position listings to the trail party leader. <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver. b. Briefed the convoy's chain of command. c. Prescribed the convoy's route. d. Prescribed the march rate and the catch-up speed. e. Determined the convoy's intervals. f. Identified the scheduled halts. g. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures. h. Briefed immediate-action security measures. i. Briefed blackout-condition procedures. j. Identified the location of medical support. k. Identified the location of maintenance support. l. Briefed communication procedures. m. Provided the location and the identification of the destination. <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that vehicles crossed the SP. c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP. <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides convoy information to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported the SP crossing time. b. Reported the CP clearance when crossed. c. Reported data that conflicted with the maps. d. Used the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions. e. Reported the RP crossing time. <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the designated march speed. b. Maintained the proper vehicle intervals. c. Crossed CPs as scheduled. d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals. e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>10. The convoy conducts scheduled halts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time. b. Maintained the prescribed vehicular intervals. c. Moved vehicles off the road. d. Established local security. e. Performed PMCS. f. Inspected vehicle loads. g. Departed at the specified times. <p>11. The convoy conducts unscheduled halts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerted the march column. b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ. c. Maintained the prescribed vehicular intervals. d. Established local security. e. Reported the resumption of the march to higher HQ. <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided a visual adjustment period. b. Prepared the vehicles for blackout conditions. c. Maintained the prescribed vehicle distances. d. Wore night vision goggles (specified personnel). e. Wore the regular eye protection goggles. f. Used ground guides during poor visibility periods. <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the disabled vehicle. b. Repaired the disabled vehicle, when possible. c. Towed vehicles, if necessary. d. Reported the vehicle's status to convoy commander. <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions. b. Used the close-column formation. c. Obeyed traffic control directions. d. Used direction guides at critical intersections. <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that vehicles crossed the RP. c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-C331.03-5002)
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, close air support (CAS), and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the element's main body into their respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not surprised by the enemy.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected the quartering party personnel. b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements. c. Determined the essential equipment needed. <p>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the location of the AA. b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA. c. Stated the time of the main body's arrival at the AA. d. Identified the order of march. e. Stated the nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions. f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact. g. Established the mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) level. <p>3. The element quartering party moves along the march route.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained security. b. Reconnoitered the march route from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP). c. Monitored for NBC contamination. d. Marked obstacles and bypass routes. <p>NOTE: Prior to moving in AA, select a small Guard Force to conduct a sweep of area.</p> <p>4. The quartering party moves into the element's AA and prepares the area for the element's arrival.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location. b. Selected and posted guides in time to meet the main body. c. Marked entrances, exits, and internal routes. d. Marked vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security. e. Marked or removed mines and obstacles. f. Organized and posted local security. <p>5. The element occupies the AA.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved the quartering party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) to guide the element to the selected or designated areas without halting. b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces. <p>6. The element establishes the AA's perimeter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established the priority of work (may vary by the unit's standing operating procedure [SOP] and mission, enemy, troops, time available, and civilian considerations [METT-TC] factors). b. Site senior leader selects position for main guns and site overlay sectors of fire. c. Positioned vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire. d. Established observations posts (OPs) on critical avenues of approach. e. Established communications between all positions (used wire communications, if the time and the situation permitted). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) At minimum main entrance and exit to site must have communications. (2) Communication must be routed to CP area. f. Prepared range cards. g. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions. h. Cleared fields of fire. i. Camouflaged positions. j. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms and early-warning devices. k. Establish a command Post (CP). <p>7. The element performs internal operation of the AA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment. b. Distributed ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment. c. Established a personal hygiene site and a field sanitation site. d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline. e. Instituted a rest plan for element members and leaders. f. Inspected the AA. <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates, as a minimum, with the elements on the left and right.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements. b. Exchanged information on OP locations and elements' signals. c. Coordinated local counterattacks. d. Developed the defensive plan and forwarded it to the higher headquarters (HQ). <p>* 9. The element leaders develop contingency plans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed the evacuation plan. b. Developed the plan of action on enemy contact. <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan. b. Rehearsed actions on enemy contact. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0007	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-5703	Construct Individual Fighting Positions	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Secure and Defend the Unit's Position (03-2-3006)
 (FM 7-8) (FM 7-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) with a defense mission. The company must provide its own security and defense. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company establishes a defense following the priorities of work disseminated in the OPORD or the FRAGO. The company is prepared to defend not later than the time specified in the OPORD. The company is not surprised by an enemy ground force.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The company organizes for defense. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Searched the area for enemy, mines, and booby traps. b. Established local security. c. Surveyed the area for nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. d. The commander assigned sectors of fire to platoons and headquarters (HQ) sections, using the minimum number of soldiers necessary to ensure security of the entire area. e. Positioned chemical-agent alarms to provide NBC warning. f. The explosive ordnance reconnaissance agent (EORA) identified, marked, and reported unexploded ordnance. 2. The company establishes observation posts (OPs). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. The commander coordinated the positioning of platoon and section operations. b. The OPs covered the entire company sector. c. The OPs provided early warning. d. The OPs provided cover and concealment for the occupants. e. The OPs had concealed routes to and from the company's position. f. The OPs operated in reliefs (a minimum of two soldiers for each OP). g. The OPs emplaced expedient early warning devices. h. The unit established communications (wire and messenger) from OPs to the company HQ. i. The unit demonstrated the correct use of the current challenge and password. j. The OPs were repositioned at alternate OP sites when required by changing visibility conditions. k. The commander coordinated platoon or section security patrols outside of the perimeter. * 3. The commander designates primary and supplementary positions or sectors of fire for the element's key weapons. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positioned machine guns to allow grazing fires along the most likely avenues of approach. b. Positioned antiarmor weapons to cover likely armor avenues of approach. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Section leaders designated mutually supporting positions along armor and dismounted infantry avenues of approach.</p> <p>d. Section leaders designated alternate positions along armor and dismounted infantry avenues of approach.</p> <p>e. Positioned grenade launchers to cover the dead space in the terrain outside hand grenade range.</p> <p>f. Ensured that range cards were prepared for all machine gun and antiarmor weapons positions.</p> <p>g. Ensured that soldiers improved alternate and supplementary fighting positions as time permitted.</p> <p>* 4. The commander prepares the unit's fire plan.</p> <p>a. Designated all machine gun and antiarmor positions.</p> <p>b. Indicated the principal direction of fire (PDF) or the final protective line (FPL) for each machine gun.</p> <p>c. Ensured that machine gun positions had interlocking fires across the company's front.</p> <p>NOTE: The position is tied in with adjacent positions and covers man-made and natural obstacles.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the section fire plans indicated sectors of fire for section weapons.</p> <p>e. Indicated prominent terrain features.</p> <p>f. Indicated command posts (CPs) and OPs.</p> <p>g. Integrated indirect fire targets, if indirect fire was available.</p> <p>5. The company constructs fighting positions.</p> <p>a. Placed fighting positions to engage targets in designated sectors of fire, covering the most dangerous avenues of approach first.</p> <p>NOTE: The range and type of weapons determines the sector of fire. The distance between positions is outside of hand grenade range or as mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC) factors permit.</p> <p>b. Established leaders' positions where they could best control the battle.</p> <p>c. Assigned fighting positions to all personnel.</p> <p>d. Reconnoitered physically to the front of each position to become familiar with the terrain and to locate any dead space.</p> <p>e. Emplaced claymore mines.</p> <p>f. Emplaced flame field expedients.</p> <p>g. Cleared the fields of fire.</p> <p>h. Prepared range cards.</p> <p>i. Prepared fighting positions and limited visibility stakes, as the mission and time permitted.</p> <p>j. Prepared overhead cover for fighting positions, as the mission and time permitted.</p> <p>k. Camouflaged positions from ground and aerial observation.</p> <p>l. Stockpiled weapons, ammunition, food, and water.</p> <p>m. Ensured that positions could not be detected from 35 meters in front of position; improved camouflage as required.</p> <p>n. Constructed alternate and supplementary fighting positions. Soldiers rehearsed routes from the primary to the alternate and supplementary positions.</p> <p>o. Continued to improve the fighting positions.</p> <p>6. The company establishes communications.</p> <p>a. Used wire as primary communications, if available.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Ensured that OPs and subordinate element leaders could communicate with the company CP.</p> <p>c. Established communications between platoon and section CPs and the company's higher HQ.</p> <p>d. Ensured that an alternate means of communications was established.</p> <p>7. The company reacts to enemy actions. The OPs--</p> <p>a. Detected and identified the enemy before the company was engaged.</p> <p>b. Alerted soldiers to occupy fighting positions.</p> <p>c. Reported the enemy's size, activity, location, unit (if known), and equipment (SALUTE) immediately. Rendered the situation reports (SITREPs) as necessary.</p> <p>d. Returned to the unit's position by a covered or concealed route before becoming decisively engaged.</p> <p>e. Requested indirect fire and/or close air support, if available and applicable.</p> <p>f. Fired organic weapons as the enemy came into range or as ordered.</p> <p>g. Leaders controlled the distribution and the rate of fire to ensure that a continuous volume of effective fire was placed on the enemy.</p> <p>h. The unit displaced to a new location on order from higher HQ.</p> <p>i. Leaders initiated and lifted final protective fires (FPFs) on signal.</p> <p>8. The company reacts to indirect fire.</p> <p>a. Alerted the unit immediately by any soldier yelling, "Incoming." Other elements were additionally alerted by any means available.</p> <p>b. Sought immediate protection under overhead cover of their fighting position. If in the open, soldiers moved to a fighting position or out of the area.</p> <p>c. Submitted the shelling report (SHELREP) or the mortar report (MORTREP).</p> <p>* 9. The unit leaders consolidate and reorganize the company.</p> <p>a. Reestablished security.</p> <p>b. Reestablished the unit's chain of command.</p> <p>c. The commander submitted the SITREP to higher HQ.</p> <p>d. Redistributed ammunition.</p> <p>e. Reassigned soldiers to OPs, key weapons, and positions.</p> <p>f. Ensured that casualties were treated and evacuated as necessary.</p> <p>g. Reported casualties.</p> <p>h. Updated the personnel roster.</p> <p>i. Continued the mission as soon as the tactical situation permitted.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
04-3301.01-0013	Defend a Squad/Platoon Position	STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0005	React to Indirect Fire	STP 21-II-MQS

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-430-0003	CONSOLIDATE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-24-SMCT
071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
NBC CENTER
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
3 SUPPORT SQUADS
SMOKE PLT HQ
2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
4 DECON PLT HQ
12 DECON SQUADS
NBC RECON PLT HQ
3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
1 SUPPORT SQUAD
REGIMENTAL CML SEC
HQ COMPANY SEC
RECON PLATOON HQ
4 RECON SQUADS
DECON PLATOON HQ
2 DECON SQUADS
RECON PLATOON
SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
RECON PLT 3 SQDS
SMK/DECON PLT HQ
SUPPORT SQUAD
3 RECON PLT HQ
12 RECON SQUADS
HEADQUARTERS SECTION
3 SMOKE PLT HQS
6 SMOKE SQUADS
4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
4 SUPPORT SQUADS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct Thorough Decontamination Operations (03-2-C312)
(FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A unit is contaminated with a persistent chemical agent during combat operations. Time is available to conduct reconstitution, to include thorough decontamination. A supporting smoke/decontamination (or decontamination) platoon is tasked to conduct the thorough decontamination mission. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The smoke/decontamination platoon sets up the detailed equipment decontamination site and removes all contamination from the equipment and vehicles. The contaminated unit sets up the detailed troop decontamination (with technical advice from the decontamination platoon) and processes all personnel. Responsible units properly close the site and report the location to higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received input from subordinate leaders and staff. b. Established decontamination priorities. <p>2. The contaminated unit submits the request for decontamination to higher HQ. The request should, as a minimum, include the--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Contaminated unit's designation. b. Contaminated unit's location. c. Contaminated unit's frequency and call sign. d. Time the unit became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Earliest possible time the unit can move or begin decontamination. h. Special requirements, such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a unit decontamination team. <p>3. The contaminated unit's higher HQ chemical staff coordinates with supporting elements.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued a warning order to the supporting chemical unit. b. Coordinated the contaminated unit's movement to the linkup point and the decontamination site. c. Coordinated with supporting elements, such as medical, engineer, air defense, military police, smoke support and water resupply. <p>NOTE: The contaminated unit is responsible for providing security for the decontamination site. Security support must be coordinated before arriving at the linkup point.</p> <p>4. The contaminated unit, the decontamination platoon, and other supporting elements arrive at the linkup point.</p> <p>* 5. The decontamination unit leader briefs the site layout and procedures.</p> <p>6. The contaminated unit conducts predecontamination site and staging area activities.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Segregated the contaminated vehicles and equipment from the uncontaminated, if possible. b. Crews, except drivers, dismounted the vehicles, ensuring that they-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Removed all the equipment from the tops of the vehicles. (2) Did not reenter the vehicles once they had exited (to prevent further contamination of the interior of the vehicles). c. Prepared vehicles and equipment for detailed equipment decontamination. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Removed all heavy mud and debris from the vehicle using pioneer tools. (2) Removed and disposed of seat covers, canvas items, camouflage netting, and other materials that can absorb chemical contaminants. (3) Removed and disposed of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) covers as contaminated waste. d. Moved contaminated personnel, vehicles, and equipment to the detailed troop and equipment decontamination lines. <p>7. Designated personnel set up and maintain communications within the decontamination site. They coordinate with supported units for additional communications support.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>8. The decontamination unit sets up detailed equipment decontamination site stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Station 1. Initial wash. b. Station 2. Decontaminating solution #2 (DS2) application. c. Station 3. Wait or interior decontamination. d. Station 4. Rinse. e. Station 5. Check. <p>9. The contaminated unit sets up detailed troop decontamination site stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Station 1. Individual gear decontamination. b. Station 2. Overboot and hood decontamination. c. Station 3. Overgarment removal. d. Station 4. Overboot and glove removal. e. Station 5. Monitor. f. Station 6. Mask removal. g. Station 7. Mask decontamination point. h. Station 8. Reissue point. <p>NOTE: The decontamination unit leader must establish a route to move vehicle operators from Station 3 of the detailed equipment decontamination site to the detailed troop decontamination site.</p> <p>*10. The decontamination unit leader, in conjunction with the leader or control cell from the contaminated unit, supervises the overall thorough decontamination site operations.</p> <p>11. The decontamination unit processes vehicles and equipment through the detailed equipment decontamination stations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. The contaminated unit provided guides to control vehicle traffic through the site. b. The drivers moved vehicles and equipment through the stations. c. The assistant drivers who had processed through the detailed troop decontamination stations replaced the primary drivers at Station 3, once the interior decontamination was completed. d. The primary drivers proceeded to the detailed troop decontamination site to process through the stations. e. The soldiers from the detailed troop decontamination site and vehicles and equipment from the detailed equipment decontamination site reunited and moved to the reconstitution area. <p>12. The contaminated unit processes personnel through the detailed troop decontamination station.</p> <p>13. The decontamination unit soldiers close the detailed equipment decontamination site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Station 1. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station, to include the power-driven decontamination equipment (PDDE) hoses and nozzles. (2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary. (3) Drained the water from the blivets or fabric tanks. (4) Loaded the equipment onto vehicles. (5) Spread a can of super-tropical bleach (STB) in each sump and covered the sumps. (6) Marked the sumps. b. Station 2 (chemical/biological only). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Applied DS2 to the PDDE, mops, handles, decontamination apparatus, and containers.</p> <p>(2) Discarded mop heads, brushes, and the station sign into Station 4's sump and then pulled the PDDE forward and washed the entire application point.</p> <p>(3) Loaded unused decontaminants onto the vehicles.</p> <p>(4) Marked the area and moved all reusable equipment from Station 2 to Station 3.</p> <p>c. Station 3.</p> <p>(1) Inspected the unused supplies for contamination; if uncontaminated, loaded the supplies onto the vehicles.</p> <p>(2) Threw the contaminated supplies into Station 4's sump.</p> <p>d. Station 4.</p> <p>(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station, to include the PDDE hoses and nozzles.</p> <p>(2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary.</p> <p>(3) Drained the water from the blivets or fabric tanks.</p> <p>(4) Loaded the equipment onto vehicles.</p> <p>(5) Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps (after the residue from Station 5 had been placed in the sump).</p> <p>(6) Marked the sumps.</p> <p>e. Station 5.</p> <p>(1) Decontaminated all equipment that was used at the station.</p> <p>(2) Loaded all reusable equipment onto the vehicles.</p> <p>(3) Discarded the unusable items into Station 4's sump.</p> <p>14. The decontamination unit moves to the troop decontamination site for decontamination.</p> <p>15. The station operators clean up the detailed troop decontamination site.</p> <p>a. Placed all used supplies from Station 7 into Station 7's sump.</p> <p>b. Moved all usable equipment and supplies from all stations to Station 1.</p> <p>c. Discarded the unusable supplies from Stations 3, 4, and 5 into the sump at Station 1.</p> <p>d. Decontaminated all supplies and equipment collected at Station 1.</p> <p>e. Emptied and rinsed the decontaminant containers from Station 1 into the sump at that station.</p> <p>f. Marked the area.</p> <p>g. Removed the overgarments using the MOPP-gear exchange technique.</p> <p>h. Disposed of the used overgarments into Station 1's sump.</p> <p>i. Moved all equipment used to fill the sump upwind of the decontamination area.</p> <p>j. Decontaminated the rubber gloves and moved all the equipment from Station 1 upwind of the decontamination area. Kept this equipment separate from the equipment used to fill the sump.</p> <p>k. Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps.</p> <p>l. Marked the sumps.</p> <p>m. Submitted an NBC 4 report to higher HQ defining the areas of contamination resulting from the decontamination operation.</p> <p>*16. The contaminated unit leader conducts reconstitution activities.</p> <p>a. Coordinated with the supported battalions for assessment and recovery teams.</p> <p>b. Coordinated and requested maintenance support.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Coordinated and requested medical support.		
d. Coordinated and established logistical support for resupply activities.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontaminating Kits	MOS E COM 9
031-503-1030	Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Operation	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1031	Use the Chemical Agent Monitor	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2001	Identify Chemical Agents Using M256-Series Chemical Agent Detector Kits	MOS E COM 9
031-503-3010	Supervise Employment of NBC Markers	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-504-1008	Operate the M8A1 Alarm System	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-504-1013	Operate the M22 Automatic Chemical Agent Alarm	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG
031-505-1011	Operate the AN/PDR27-Series Radiac Set	STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B1-SM-TG
031-506-1053	Report NBC Information Using NBC 4 Report	MOS E COM 9
031-506-2027	Select Detailed Equipment Decontamination Site	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG
031-506-4025	Establish Decontamination Material Requirements	STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG
031-507-1002	Decontaminate Equipment Using ABC-M11 Decontamination Apparatus	STP 3-54B34-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST) MOS E COM 9
031-507-1020	Operate the M12A1 Decontaminating Apparatus	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG
031-507-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area	STP 3-CST (ST) MOS E COM 9
031-507-1022	Decontaminate Equipment Using M13 Decontaminating Apparatus, Portable	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG
031-507-1041	Operate the M17 Lightweight Decontaminating System	STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B1-SM-TG
		STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-507-2013	Supervise Detailed Equipment Decontamination	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG
031-507-2018	Supervise Detailed Troop Decontamination	STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG
031-507-2038	Control Contaminated Waste	STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG
071-326-3049	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures for an Operation	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG STP 3-54B34-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Employ Physical Security Measures (03-3-0016)
 (FM 3-19.30) (FM 20-3) (FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Physical security measures are needed to guard vulnerable information and operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) patrol attempts a reconnaissance or intrusion into the perimeter. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit maintains 24-hour security in its assigned area and is not surprised by an enemy force.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The unit leader plans and consolidates a unit physical-security plan. * 2. The unit leader prepared and carried out a security plan for each platoon area and squad location within 1 hour of the unit's occupation. The plan included the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prevention of vehicle entry to the command post (CP). b. Selection and manning of the unit's perimeter positions that detect and report OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP's perimeter. c. Prevention of civilian access to the unit and the defensive areas. d. Maintenance of communications between the perimeter posts and the reaction force. e. Initial response to a ground attack. f. Primary and alternate means of communications from the security headquarters (HQ) to the dismount point and perimeter posts. 3. The unit operates a guard force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned personnel to establish communications between the guard commander and sentry posts. b. Posted sentries to stop unauthorized entry into restricted areas. c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breach the unit's CP perimeter. 4. The unit reacts to an enemy ground attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Occupied preplanned positions. b. Reported the attack to higher HQ. c. Executed the planned response. d. Denied intrusion into the CP's perimeter. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-410-0019	CONTROL ORGANIC FIRES	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG STP 3-54B34-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Plan the Employment of a Biological Detection (BD) Platoon (03-3-0018)
 (TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tasked to support combat operations to detect or identify biological hazards within the corps's area of operations (AO). They also collect suspected samples of biological contamination and prepare them for evacuation and continental United States (CONUS) shipment for laboratory analysis, initiate chain-of-custody procedures to safeguard suspected biological samples, and submit applicable reports to subordinate units and higher headquarters (HQ). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant is required to conduct initial and subsequent planning for employment of the biological detection teams and must receive and analyze the current mission statement and apply the commander's intent and concept of operations. The platoon leader or key leaders must conduct appropriate reconnaissance of possible routes and establish primary and alternate position areas for biological surveillance operations. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant must identify which surveillance technique (area surveillance or critical node [point detection]) is required for all assigned missions in support of combat operations. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant must include troop-leading procedures and follow established command and control (C2) functions according to the operation order (OPORD) and the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The platoon leader receives an OPORD from higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the OPORD for all critical information. b. Checked the mission statement. c. Verified the commander's intent and the concept of the operation for the stated mission. d. Checked the map and overlays to determine the initial sites and locations for Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) surveillance operations. e. Conducted a map and ground reconnaissance of the primary and alternate travel routes. f. Reconnoitered the initial biological surveillance sites and identified primary and alternate surveillance sites within the location. <p>2. The platoon sergeant conducted troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received a warning order from the platoon leader that included the mission. b. Analyzed the mission using the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). c. Clarified all unclear, vague, or misunderstood information in the warning order. d. Used the one-third/two-thirds rule to fully develop the plan. e. Used the backward-planning technique to plan the mission execution. f. Used a minimum of one-third of the total time to plan for the mission. g. Used at least two-thirds of the total time to prepare for the mission execution. h. Checked the warning order to determine what time the mission started. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 3. The platoon leader issued a warning order to all key leaders and unit members. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Squad and team leaders prepared for the mission execution. b. Unit members followed all instructions contained in the unit's TSOP. c. Unit leaders ensured that all soldiers performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on individual equipment and vehicles. d. Unit members ensured that all fuel cans and water cans were filled. e. Ensured that rations and ammunition (basic loads) were available and ready for loading onto vehicles. f. Unit leaders ensured that all equipment and supplies were loaded onto vehicles according to the vehicle load plans and the unit's TSOP. * 4. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant makes a tentative plan based on METT-TC factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used METT-TC factors to develop a tentative unit plan. b. Included the starting time and the start point (SP) to the designated unit location. c. Identified all areas selected for reconnoitering. * 5. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant estimates the situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included the following items in the estimate: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) A detailed mission analysis. (2) A detailed situation analysis and possible courses of actions (COAs). (3) A detailed analysis of the enemy's situations and possible COAs. (4) An evaluation of his unit's situations (troops, resources, and available time). (5) Detailed COAs based on the relationships of friendly forces. b. Conducted war games to evaluate the various COAs for completeness and soundness. c. Compared the various COAs to determine the best COA. * 6. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant starts necessary unit movement to various locations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted planning for moving the units. b. Conducted a personal reconnaissance. c. Ensured the availability of supplies to sustain mission operations. * 7. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant conducts an actual ground reconnaissance of the designated surveillance sites. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Took the quartering party forward to reconnoiter the designated area. b. Decided on the actual areas to set up the biological detection surveillance sites. c. Set up (along with the quartering party) the area for occupation, if time permitted. * 8. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant plans biological detection operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Considered biological-agent cloud behavior characteristics, such as the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Low agent requirement. (2) Large area coverage. (3) Effects of weather and terrain on the biological-agent cloud. (4) Varying rates-of-effect pertaining to the biological-agent cloud. b. Was aware of biological agent characteristics, such as the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Wide range of effects. (2) Relative ease to produce. (3) Subjection to rapid decay. (4) Difficulty in detection. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Gave great consideration for nondestructive delivery means for the biological-agent cloud. d. Gave careful consideration for pervasive actions pertaining to biological-agent cloud activity. e. Was prepared to make recommendations to the commander for the implementation of vaccines and other treatment procedures (when possible and time permitted). f. Determined primary reporting procedures. g. Reported all stages of readiness as the biological plan was completed. * 9. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant completes the plan using the five-paragraph format field order or a matrix order as a guide. *10. The platoon leader issues the mission order to key leaders. *11. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant supervises the unit's preparation and activity.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201)

(FM 3-100)

(FM 3-3)

(FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that the opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having their mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader checks accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators. b. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes. c. Identified equipment shortages. d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The unit assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). The soldiers--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Donned their masks and hoods within 15 seconds. b. Assumed MOPP 4 within 8 minutes. <p>3. The unit takes action to protect themselves against an NBC attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Set up and used collective-protective shelters, if available. b. Prepared protective shelters (such as foxholes) with overhead cover. <p>* 4. The unit leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received and analyzed the enemy's NBC threat capability. <p>NOTE: Some considerations are: Is the unit targeted or can it be targeted? Does the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons? When or where would the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Collected and analyzed weather data. <p>NOTE: Some considerations are: Is it day or night? What are the current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or the weather report)? What are weather conditions two, four, and six hours in the future (see the CDM or the weather report)?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Analyzed the unit's status and mission. <p>NOTE: Some considerations are: What is the mission? What is the work rate? How long will the work take? What is the training and physical level of the unit? How long will it take to warn all soldiers of an NBC attack?</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-504-1008	Operate the M8A1 Alarm System	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-504-1013	Operate the M22 Automatic Chemical Agent Alarm	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-506-2019	Supervise Preparation of Vehicles, Equipment, and Personnel for NBC Reconnaissance	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 NBC RECON PLT HQ
 3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 RECON PLATOON HQ
 4 RECON SQUADS
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 RECON PLATOON
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 RECON PLT 3 SQDS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 3 RECON PLT HQ
 12 RECON SQUADS
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202)
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel must assume mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete their preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The unit protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed MOPP 4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, either their right or left ankles, and the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position. <p>3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions and shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. <p>NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</p> <p>* 4. Noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP 4. b. Ensured that individual and platoon fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover. <p>* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level as appropriate.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
NBC CENTER
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
3 SUPPORT SQUADS
SMOKE PLT HQ
2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
4 DECON PLT HQ
12 DECON SQUADS
NBC RECON PLT HQ
3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
1 SUPPORT SQUAD
REGIMENTAL CML SEC
HQ COMPANY SEC
RECON PLATOON HQ
4 RECON SQUADS
DECON PLATOON HQ
2 DECON SQUADS
RECON PLATOON
SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
RECON PLT 3 SQDS
SMK/DECON PLT HQ
SUPPORT SQUAD
3 RECON PLT HQ
12 RECON SQUADS
HEADQUARTERS SECTION
3 SMOKE PLT HQS
6 SMOKE SQUADS
4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
4 SUPPORT SQUADS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that the opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP 4, and immediately use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that soldiers put on protective masks within 9 seconds. b. Gave a vocal or nonvocal alarm. c. Assumed MOPP 4 as soon as possible. d. Sought additional shelter, if available. e. Administered a nerve-agent antidote to other soldiers (buddy aid) with symptoms of nerve-agent poisoning, if applicable. f. Administered nerve-agent antidotes to selves, if applicable. g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed. <p>2. Soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits. c. Used prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas. <p>3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted skin decontamination. b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits. c. Conducted operator's spray down of equipment. <p>* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that casualties were provided medical care. b. Reported casualties. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately. d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1030	Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Operation	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 NBC RECON PLT HQ
 3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 RECON PLATOON HQ
 4 RECON SQUADS
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 RECON PLATOON
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 RECON PLT 3 SQDS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 3 RECON PLT HQ
 12 RECON SQUADS
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a strike warning (STRIKWARN) message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear STRIKWARN.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Designated radio operators acknowledge the STRIKWARN message. a. Authenticated the call.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Acknowledged the warning by a return message.</p> <p>* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p> a. Warned subordinate and affected units.</p> <p> b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed.</p> <p>3. Unit soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs.</p> <p> a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions).</p> <p> b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</p> <p> c. Tied down essential antennas.</p> <p> d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.</p> <p> e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</p> <p>NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.</p> <p> f. Zeroed dosimeters.</p> <p> g. Secured loose, flammable (or explosive) items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 NBC RECON PLT HQ
 3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 RECON PLATOON HQ
 4 RECON SQUADS
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 RECON PLATOON
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 RECON PLT 3 SQDS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 3 RECON PLT HQ
 12 RECON SQUADS
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads according to the unit's SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable (or explosive) items and food and water containers to protect them from nuclear weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters, if available. i. Used field-expedient shelters. <p>* 3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continued periodic monitoring b. Reported all dose-rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208)
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The area's approximate boundaries are known or marked. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed individuals who may have been exposed to radioactive dust particles to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Received operational exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose or turn-back dose rate). c. Ensured that radiac-equipment operators checked their instruments. 2. The unit prepares for the crossing.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Identified extra shielding requirements; for example, used sandbags on the floor of vehicles. b. Placed externally stored equipment inside or covered it with available material. c. Started continuous monitoring. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided stirring up dust. b. Kept out of dust clouds by increasing intervals/distance between vehicles. c. Conducted the movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles were buttoned up). 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties, if applicable. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties. e. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	Control Unit Radiation Exposure	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 NBC RECON PLT HQ
 3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 RECON PLATOON HQ
 4 RECON SQUADS
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 RECON PLATOON
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 RECON PLT 3 SQDS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 3 RECON PLT HQ
 12 RECON SQUADS
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS

TASK: React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209)
 (FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede its performance of the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke. b. Used threat smoke to conceal its movements. c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke. d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal its own activities. 2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit. b. Determined the wind's direction and speed. c. Determined where to release smoke and where it would travel. d. Determined the duration of smoke operations. e. Determined the effect of weather conditions on its smoke plan. f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit's position. g. Requested smoke support from other units (if the organic systems did not accomplish the task). 3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in smoke. b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in smoke. * 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests resupply of smoke munitions, when required. a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots. b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-508-3061	Plan Smoke Operations	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG STP 3-54B34-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-508-3067	Control Smoke Operations	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG STP 3-54B34-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 NBC RECON PLT HQ
 3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 RECON PLATOON HQ
 4 RECON SQUADS
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 RECON PLATOON
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 RECON PLT 3 SQDS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 3 RECON PLT HQ
 12 RECON SQUADS
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Covered the equipment; munitions; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) supplies; and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles. c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout. d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and NBC identification equipment. <p>2. Designated personnel monitor the fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained total-dose information, using available total-dose instruments. b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible. c. Calculated the optimum time of exit. d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) as required, using secure means when possible. <p>* 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Planned for the rotation of individuals to minimize their exposure. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	Control Unit Radiation Exposure	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-506-1051	Record Data on DA Form 1971-R or 1971-1-R	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG
031-506-2010	Calculate Time of Entry/Time of Stay for Fallout Areas	STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG
031-506-2015	Compute Total Dose for Fallout Area	STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 NBC RECON PLT HQ
 3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 RECON PLATOON HQ
 4 RECON SQUADS
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 RECON PLATOON
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 RECON PLT 3 SQDS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 3 RECON PLT HQ
 12 RECON SQUADS
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Without warning, soldiers-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Closed their eyes immediately. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their head toward the blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle). (3) Kept their heads and faces down and their helmets on. (4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling. b. With warning, soldiers-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters. (2) Moved to the shelter. (3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. (4) Kept their clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times. (5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas. * 2. Leaders reorganize the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Reestablished communications. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ). d. Treated casualties. e. Reported casualties. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implemented continuous monitoring. i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ. j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required. k. Extinguished all fires. * 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational. 4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use. 5. Soldiers improve cover, if applicable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1018	React to Nuclear Hazard/Attack	MOS E COM 9

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3005	Submit NBC 1 Report	MOS E COM 9
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	Control Unit Radiation Exposure	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-506-1051	Record Data on DA Form 1971-R or 1971-1-R	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
081-831-1005	PERFORM FIRST AID TO PREVENT OR CONTROL SHOCK	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1007	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR BURNS	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1025	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1033	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN HEAD WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1034	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR A SUSPECTED FRACTURE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
NBC CENTER
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
3 SUPPORT SQUADS
SMOKE PLT HQ
2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
4 DECON PLT HQ
12 DECON SQUADS
NBC RECON PLT HQ
3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
1 SUPPORT SQUAD
REGIMENTAL CML SEC
HQ COMPANY SEC
RECON PLATOON HQ
4 RECON SQUADS
DECON PLATOON HQ
2 DECON SQUADS
RECON PLATOON
SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
RECON PLT 3 SQDS
SMK/DECON PLT HQ
SUPPORT SQUAD
3 RECON PLT HQ
12 RECON SQUADS
HEADQUARTERS SECTION
3 SMOKE PLT HQS
6 SMOKE SQUADS
4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
4 SUPPORT SQUADS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224)
(FM 3-5) (FM 3-100)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in a contaminated environment. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. The time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination unit is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminates their individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-

5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and/or reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provides temporary relief from MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received input from his staff and subordinate leaders. b. Established decontamination priorities. 2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request should include, as a minimum, the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Contaminated unit's designation. b. Contaminated unit's location. c. Contaminated unit's frequency and call sign. d. Time that the unit became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment (by type) that were contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a unit decontamination team). * 3. The contaminated unit coordinates with higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtained necessary support. b. Selected the linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment (PDDE) crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon). c. Coordinated with supporting elements. d. Requested replacement MOPP gear. e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange. * 4. The contaminated unit's leader and NBC specialists select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected provides-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Adequate overhead concealment. b. Good drainage. c. Easy access and exit routes (but off the main routes). d. Proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down. e. An area large enough to accommodate units involved in operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle wash-down site and the MOPP gear exchange site). 5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested operational decontamination support. b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination. c. Established communications with the decontamination unit. d. Ensured that the decontamination unit knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination site. 6. The contaminated unit and supporting units move to the decontamination site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated. b. The contaminated unit provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>7. The units prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Set up the decontamination site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The supporting decontamination unit crew set up the vehicle wash-down site. (2) The contaminated unit set up a MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle wash-down site. (3) The remainder of the unit prepared its equipment for decontamination. b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Vehicle crews (except operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior. (2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from vehicles. <p>NOTE: The contaminated unit provides personnel to do this when crews do not dismount.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and proper intervals). (b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered. (4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle wash-down site. (5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site. <p>8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination unit supervises the operation of the vehicle wash-down site, ensuring that vehicle operators--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained proper intervals between vehicles while processing through the wash-down station. b. Washed vehicles properly. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Started at the top and worked down. (2) Sprayed hot soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle. (3) Monitored water consumption. c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle's wash down. d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange. <p>9. The contaminated unit conducted MOPP gear exchange.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix). b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed. c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material). d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system. e. Moved the soldiers to the AA after they completed the MOPP gear exchange. <p>NOTE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure that supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding. 2. The supporting decontamination unit will clean and mark the site and report the area of contamination (using an NBC 4 report) to higher HQ. <p>*10. Unit leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*11. The contaminated unit's leader reported to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Reported the completion and the location of the vehicle wash-down and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites. b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazards were detected. c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher HQ). 12. The unit continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1023	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination When Changing Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-505-1011	Operate the AN/PDR27-Series Radiac Set	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-507-1040	Perform Operator PMCS on Decontaminating Apparatus, Portable	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 NBC RECON PLT HQ
 3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 RECON PLATOON HQ
 4 RECON SQUADS
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 RECON PLATOON
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 RECON PLT 3 SQDS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 3 RECON PLT HQ
 12 RECON SQUADS
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226)
 (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route and cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report or reconnaissance reports to select a route. b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtained route clearance and approval. 2. The unit prepares to cross the area. a. Assumed mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area. b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route and/or had strip maps. c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Placed externally stored equipment inside or covered it with available material. e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducted a dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crossed the area as quickly and as carefully as possible. 4. The unit exits the contaminated area. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties, if applicable. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1030	Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Operation	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1031	Use the Chemical Agent Monitor	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1032	Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Movement	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3303.01-0034	Navigate Using a Map and Compass	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3303.02-0040	Navigate with a Compass and Map	MOS O COM 2
04-3306.01-0003	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for a Biological Attack (03-4-0018)
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is engaged in combat, or combat is imminent. Communication is established, and you are receiving reports from subordinate units and are submitting them to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). Enemy forces possess the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. You have received notice that a biological attack is probable. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element must implement actions to minimize casualties and damage to the equipment. The element must assume the designated mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) level and complete their preparation before the attack or the effects of the attack reach their location. The element must protect personnel, equipment, food, and water and continue its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order with special instructions included.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that all personnel received the warning order. b. Ensured that all personnel understood the warning order. <p>2. The element starts defensive preparations for a possible biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assumed the designated MOPP level according to the TSOP. b. Enforced field sanitation procedures. c. Monitored for biological contamination (observed personnel for symptoms of contamination and looked for dead animals). d. Covered and protected food, water, and equipment. <p>3. The element prepares fighting positions and shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. <p>* 4. The element leader increases or decreases the MOPP level based upon the tactical situation and guidance received from higher HQ or the commander.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4002	Supervise Unit Preparation for NBC Attack	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: DIV CHEMICAL SECTION
 NBC CENTER
 COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 REGIMENTAL CML SEC
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Respond to a Biological Attack (03-4-0019)
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is engaged in combat, or combat is imminent. Communication is established, and you are receiving reports from subordinate units and are submitting them to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). Enemy forces possess the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. A weapon just exploded in the element's area with soldiers exhibiting symptoms of biological agents. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element takes immediate actions. Soldiers continue the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Soldiers react to the attack. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Donned their mask. b. Assumed mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4. 2. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Decontaminated their contaminated skin. b. Conducted wipe down of their equipment. * 3. The element leader reorganizes the unit, as required. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reestablished the chain of command and communications. b. Received the element's status; consolidated the status and passed it on to higher HQ, as appropriate. c. Identified, treated, marked, and evacuated casualties. Decontaminated soldiers wounded in action (WIA) before medical evacuation. d. Wrapped, marked, and evacuated soldiers killed in action (KIA) to the designated collection point. e. Ensured that mission operations continued. 4. The element takes additional protective measures. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area. c. Ensured that preventive-medicine and field sanitation procedures were implemented. d. Marked the contaminated areas, as required. 5. The element submits and processes the required chemical and biological reports. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submitted an initial nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report (suspected biological attack) according to the TSOP. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Prepared and disseminated an NBC 3 report to subordinate units according to the TSOP. c. Transmitted a follow-up NBC 1 report that included observation information, when observations showed that it was probably a biological attack. * 6. The element leader ensures that all soldiers receive or have received immunization for the type of agent used. * 7. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level as required based on the MOPP analysis and guidance received from higher HQ. * 8. The element leader conducts unmasking procedures based on determining that the hazard has dissipated from the area. 9. The element replenishes NBC-defense equipment and supplies. a. Initiated replacement action for equipment and supplies. b. Distributed or cross-loaded supplies to an equal level within the element. 10. The element continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-3-0210.03-1001)
 (FM 20-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Camouflage resources are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small-arms range. The element's location or identity cannot be determined through aerial photographs or ground-surveillance radar (GSR). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible and followed and paralleled hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features. b. Made certain that the vehicle track signatures continued past their parked locations to other logical spots. 2. Operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used existing tracks. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that were used as reference points by the enemy's ground and aerial fires.</p> <p>c. Obliterated the vehicle tracks where they turned into concealed positions.</p> <p>3. Element personnel conceal vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>a. Positioned vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows.</p> <p>b. Positioned vehicles and equipment so that their shapes blended in with their surroundings.</p> <p>c. Used natural material to break up the shapes or shadows of vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>d. Blended natural material with the surrounding area.</p> <p>e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color.</p> <p>f. Used nets to create shadows.</p> <p>g. Used camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural material.</p> <p>h. Kept heat sources, such as generators, engines, and mess areas under screening systems, even when using natural concealment.</p> <p>i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies.</p> <p>j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain), when the situation permitted.</p> <p>k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain.</p> <p>l. Disguised vehicles and equipment to change their appearance to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy.</p> <p>* 4. Leaders enforce camouflage discipline.</p> <p>a. Directed the avoidance of activity that changed the area's appearance or revealed the presence of military equipment.</p> <p>b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night.</p> <p>c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking it with the terrain, defilade positions, or shields.</p> <p>d. Ensured the prompt and complete police of debris from the area.</p> <p>* 5. Leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead.</p> <p>a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) reports from higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates.</p> <p>c. Incorporated this information into the tactical plan.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 HQ COMPANY SEC

TASK: React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-C337.03-1037)
 (FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: During combat operations, the unit encounters UXO. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit reacts to a UXO hazard while continuing its mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element recognizes a UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the UXO by type. b. Identified the UXO by subgroup. c. Observed all safety precautions. 		
* 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evacuated the area as appropriate. b. Determined appropriate action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Avoided the UXO hazard. (2) Instituted protective measures. 		
* 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chose leaders to mark the area. b. Briefed the leaders on the area to be marked. 		
4. The element marks the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marked all logical approach routes. b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers. 		
* 5. The element leader reports the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated a UXO spot report. b. Determined the priority based on the current situation. c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008)
 (FM 3-19) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of (or information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander and the operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company's organic reconnaissance platoons. The plan must be issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the platoons. The plan must be in detail and feasible for the platoons to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander must supervise the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The commander receives and analyses the mission and identifies all unit tasks. * 2. The commander issues a warning order as soon as possible to subordinate leaders. * 3. (For company missions.) The commander and operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC) factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included in the plan the reconnaissance or survey technique, the location, the turn-back dose rate (radiological missions), the decontamination after the reconnaissance or survey, fire support, the reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information. b. The headquarters (HQ) coordinated for intelligence information, air or indirect fire support, and medical support and coordinated its plan with the units in the area of operations (AO), if necessary. c. The HQ drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oil, and lubricant (POL) supplies; ammunition; mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear; Class II and Class VII support; and maintenance, recovery, and Class IX (repair parts and components) support for the platoons. * 4. (For company missions.) The commander orders the units to start the movement, if necessary. * 5. The commander reconnoiters the AO. He makes a map reconnaissance as a minimum. * 6. The commander completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoons. * 7. If the location of the operation permits, the commander supervises preparations of the reconnaissance or survey. The communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>8. (For company missions.) The company conducts a tactical road march or executes the traveling movement to the reconnaissance or survey site (evaluated separately) and conducts a reconnaissance or survey.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reconnaissance elements executed a mounted-movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation or the mission required. b. Reconnaissance elements accurately detected and properly marked the contaminated area, ensuring that the marking signs faced toward friendly areas. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Detected uncontaminated areas and routes accurately. (2) Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and the physical capacity to hold a site if required to reconnoiter for decontamination sites as a mission. c. Survey elements determined the limits of the contaminated area accurately. They detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission. <p>9. If prescribed by the mission, the HQ section assists the reconnaissance or survey units' recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. If prescribed by the mission, the commander or the operations officer debriefs the returning reconnaissance or survey units and forwards the acquired information to higher HQ, in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.</p> <p>11. (Radiological.) Company leaders record, collate, and submit to higher HQ individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4002	Supervise Unit Preparation for NBC Attack	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	Control Unit Radiation Exposure	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-505-1011	Operate the AN/PDR27-Series Radiac Set	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-506-2015	Compute Total Dose for Fallout Area	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-506-2054	Advise Commander on Crossing Contaminated Area	STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG
031-506-3041	Determine Radiation Exposure Status	STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		STP 3-54B34-SM-TG
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 3-CST (ST) STP 21-II-MQS
04-3306.01-0001	Control Movement Techniques	STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0005	React to Indirect Fire	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0008	Analyze Terrain	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1003	DETERMINE A MAGNETIC AZIMUTH USING A LENSATIC COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1012	ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT
113-573-4006	USE THE KTC 1400(*) NUMERICAL CIPHER/AUTHENTICATION SYSTEM	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG
113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)	STP 3-CST (ST) STP 21-24-SMCT
551-721-1352	PERFORM VEHICLE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS)	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

ELEMENT: Company

TASK: Conduct Biological Defense Planning (03-2-7003)
 (TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is tasked to prepare plans that provide biological defense support for the joint task force, corps, and theater biological defense operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company biological defense plans must support the JTF, corps, and theater levels of biological defense operations. The plans must include the five interdependent components of biological defense operations: deterrence and destruction, detection and warning, protection, decontamination, and medical.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) commander conducts planning for biological defense operations based on the five interdependent components: deterrence and destruction, detection and warning, protection, decontamination, and medical.</p> <p>a. Deterrence planning phase.</p> <p>(1) Strategic-level deterrence planning.</p> <p>(a) Obtained and reviewed appropriate strategic-level force protection information from higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>(b) Determined, if possible, the potential adversary's production status (the types of biological warfare [BW] agents), weaponizing, and any history of use of BW weapons.</p> <p>(2) Operational-level deterrence planning. Received information from higher HQ on--</p> <p>(a) The overall status of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) readiness within the force.</p> <p>(b) Command and control (C2), reporting guidance, and future concepts of operations.</p> <p>(c) The potential adversary's ability to present a viable BW threat.</p> <p>b. Destruction planning phase. Received planning information (as needed) from higher HQ on--</p> <p>(1) Potential combat operations against a potential adversary's BW capability.</p> <p>(2) The list of potential targets, such as BW production facilities, transportation assets, and C2 facilities.</p> <p>NOTE: Other targets that may be considered include aircraft, missile launchers, and other long-range delivery systems, along with the need to reduce their target acquisition and targeting capability.</p> <p>c. Detection planning phase.</p> <p>(1) Advised the higher HQ's NBC staff and the supported unit concerning the importance of detection being a key element of contamination avoidance. Elements of detection include--</p> <p>(a) Avoiding or minimizing exposure to a BW agent through early detection and early warning will minimize the impact on tactical operations.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(b) Detection followed by agent identification is critical to effective postattack treatment.</p> <p>(c) Detection of the BW attack and identification of the BW agent before the onset of symptoms will result in potentially infected warfighters receiving early treatment and will be highly successful in reducing casualties and minimizing combat degradation.</p> <p>(2) Provided higher HQ and the NBC staff with input to the plans of the JTF, corps, and theater commander and the supported unit for the assets they would use to detect and mitigate the effects of biological attacks.</p> <p>(3) Provided higher HQ and the NBC staff with information and guidance on integrating biodetection systems (such as the BIDS and the Long-Range BIDS Standoff Detection System [LRBIDS]) into the commander's overall battlefield reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan that feeds directly into the United States (US) Forces' warning and reporting system.</p> <p>(4) Advised higher HQ that integrated use of detection systems had the capability to detect the presence of BW agents.</p> <p>(5) Reviewed the planning and R&S information from the commander's critical information requirements to assess whether or not the potential adversary had the capability and the will to launch a BW attack.</p> <p>(6) Reviewed the planning information (as needed) from higher HQ and the NBC staff on the status of human intelligence that may provide information on future enemy intentions and BW manufacturing capabilities and locations.</p> <p>(7) Advised higher HQ and the NBC staff on the deployment (array/critical node) of biological detectors (BIDS/LRBIDS) that would support the JTF, corps, and theater in detecting large-scale attacks.</p> <p>(8) Provided information and guidance that BW detection must focus on the following complementary capabilities and procedures:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) The positioning of long-range standoff sensors (such as the LRBIDS) to detect large particulate clouds and discriminate between man-made and natural aerosol clouds. (b) The positioning of point detectors for timely ground-based detection. (c) Real-time symptom analysis by medical personnel using epidemiological and diagnostic methods. (d) Medical laboratories providing testing for the initial phase of medical confirmation of biological agents. (e) Real-time data communications with biological sensors to synchronize detection. (f) Staff analysis involving intelligence, chemical, and medical officers who analyze detection reports and recommend actions to the commander. (g) Confirmation on whether a BW attack occurred. (h) Maintaining a chain of custody for all samples. <p>d. Warning planning phase.</p> <p>(1) Provided information and guidance to higher HQ and the NBC staff on BW warning with and without the BIDS company assets. The information and guidance included--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Without a BIDS company in theater, it would be extremely difficult for the supported commander to determine that a BW attack has occurred. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(b) Without a BIDS company in theater, units would generally be unable to distinguish a biological attack from a chemical attack.</p> <p>(c) With a BIDS company in theater, a more reliable capability is available to confirm or deny a possible BW attack.</p> <p>(d) With a BIDS company in theater, the results of the detection and identification process are reported through the platoon HQ to the BIDS commander command post (CP), normally located in the vicinity of the supported operational-level command's tactical operating center (TOC).</p> <p>(e) With a BIDS company in theater, the reported information, along with other intelligence and medical data, provides the supported command staff with the capability to assess with a relatively high degree of confidence that a BW attack has occurred.</p> <p>(2) Provided information and guidance to higher HQ and the NBC staff on centralized and decentralized BW warning. The information and guidance included--</p> <p>(a) The corps or higher HQ is best equipped to make the decision to warn the force.</p> <p>(b) Subordinate HQ can make the decision if there is strong evidence that a BW attack has occurred.</p> <p>(c) The commander owning the BIDS assets must decide on what method of warning to employ. Key factors include the type of agent, the type of mission, and risk guidance.</p> <p>e. Protection planning phase.</p> <p>(1) Provided information and guidance to higher HQ and the supported commander on the protection requirements during a BW attack. Guidance included--</p> <p>(a) Before, during, and after a BW attack, the supported commander must implement measures to protect the force.</p> <p>(b) The medical objectives are to prevent casualties with medical countermeasures, diagnose disease, and treat casualties.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the overall protection requirements included individual and collective protection and lowering the unit's protection posture.</p> <p>f. Decontamination planning phase. Provided information and guidance to higher HQ, the NBC staff, and the supported commander on the decontamination requirements after a BW attack occurred. Guidance included--</p> <p>(1) After a BW attack, commanders must consider the potential need to conduct decontamination operations.</p> <p>(2) BW agent identification is a key factor in directing and prioritizing decontamination efforts.</p> <p>(3) To mitigate the risk of infection from residual BW hazards, commanders should direct basic hygiene requirements, such as changing and washing clothing, bathing where practical, and the use of other personal decontamination materials.</p> <p>(4) If possible, avoid the contamination and allow the agent to decay as it is exposed to the environment, such as direct sunlight.</p> <p>(5) Wiping down select equipment with disinfectants such as bleach will destroy most BW contamination.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(6) The appropriate decontamination decisions rest with the commander based on avoidance, risk, and operational requirements. Operational decontamination requirements of BW agents will center primarily on removal and secondarily on destruction. Individual decontamination will require normal hygiene and those individual decontamination procedures already established for other types of contamination.</p> <p>g. Medical planning phase. Received information from higher HQ and the supported unit on the medical goals of biodefense, which are to--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Prevent casualties with medical countermeasures. (2) Diagnose disease and the treatment of casualties to prevent lethality. (3) Reduce the severity and duration of BW agent effects. (4) Maximize the return to duty. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Plan and Coordinate Unit Deployment (03-3-0001)
 (DOD REG 4500.9-R) (FM 100-17) (FM 55-9)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is at a normal state of deployment readiness and receives a warning order to prepare for overseas deployment. The unit leader has been notified. The unit's movement plan, recall plan, security plan, access rosters, and current maps are available. The unit has a trained noncommissioned officer (NCO) appointed as the unit movement NCO (UMNCO). Main body personnel, advanced party personnel, a sea port of embarkation (SPOE) team, an equipment reception team, a packing and crating team, a weighing and marking team, and a rail-loading team have been designated by the unit leaders and trained in their deployment tasks and specific duties. The unit is deploying as part of a larger force. Alert notification activities are performed day and night under all environmental conditions. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel are recalled according to the recall plan. All personnel are present or accounted for, and briefings are conducted for unit personnel and deployment teams according to the movement plan. Security is established according to the security plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit commander and/or unit leaders review or update the strategic movement plans and standing operating procedures (SOPs).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the movement plan and SOPs for all modes of transportation were on hand; updated the plans and SOPs, as required. b. Ensured that the unit's movement plan identified administrative, personnel processing, security, logistical, and coordination requirements for implementation. c. Ensured that the plans consisted of vehicle preparation, individual vehicle load plans, detailed personnel processing procedures, censorship and security procedures, the duties and responsibilities of unit personnel, and movement data. d. Ensured that movement data included the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Number of personnel to be moved. (2) Weight and dimensions of items to be moved. (3) Nomenclature of items, a description of outsized/oversized cargo, and a list of hazardous materials planned for transport. (4) Duties of the unit's movement personnel in the preparation of documentation. <p>* 2. The unit leader initiates the unit's readiness SOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated recall procedures. b. Secured the unit area. c. Reported the personnel, logistics, and maintenance status to higher headquarters (HQ). d. Received and disseminated the concept of operations to subordinate soldiers. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Identified and corrected all shortcomings in personnel, equipment, and supplies, including basic loads. f. Packed and loaded all vehicles according to the unit's movement plans and SOPs. g. Prepared and reduced all vehicles to the configuration required by the mode of transportation being used. h. Packaged and marked all hazardous material with Department of Defense (DD) Form 1387-2. i. Submitted requests to the movement control center (MCC) or the installation transportation office (ITO) for special hauling permits and additional haul, as required. <p>* 3. Leaders coordinate on the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the higher HQ's Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) (G3) and the transportation officer. b. Coordinated movement to the point of embarkation (SPOE or aerial port of embarkation [APOE]). c. Coordinated port support activity requirements with the Military Traffic Management Command (MTMC). <p>4. The unit deploys by convoy to the railhead, the SPOE, or the APOE, as required.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for and Conduct Rail Deployment (03-3-0002)
 (DOD REG 4500.9-R) (FM 100-17) (FM 55-9)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has received movement instructions to deploy by rail to a port of embarkation (POE). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit loads all available equipment and moves to the rail site. This task is not conducted in a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contaminated environment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit prepares to deploy by rail to the POE. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured the availability of blocking and bracing material. b. Assembled troops, vehicles, and equipment at the designated railhead staging area. c. Prepared for the movement according to instructions contained in applicable publications, higher headquarters's (HQ's) directives, and the unit's standing operating procedures (SOPs). 2. The unit loads equipment at the rail site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Loaded, blocked, and braced vehicles and equipment. b. Performed joint inspections (together with the installation transportation office [ITO] and railroad representatives) of the loaded equipment before releasing it for movement. c. Corrected any joint inspection deficiencies. d. Moved at the scheduled time of departure. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for and Conduct Air Deployment (03-3-0003)
 (DOD REG 4500.9-R) (FM 100-17) (FM 55-9)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has received movement instructions to deploy/report to an aerial port of embarkation (APOE). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit loads all available personnel and equipment and moves to the APOE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit prepares to conduct movement operations for departure at the aerial port of debarkation (APOD). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assembled vehicles, personnel, and equipment into chalks. b. Established liaisons with the departure airfield control group (DACG). c. Performed final preparations of vehicles and equipment. d. Conducted and corrected any joint inspection deficiencies. e. Ensured that shoring material was on hand and readily accessible. f. Ensured that chalk commanders were appointed and briefed and had prepared and given passenger and cargo manifests to the DACG. g. Maintained security. h. Ensured that each chalk responded to all call-forward orders and directions issued by the DACG before release to the airlift control element (ALCE). * 2. Commanders or unit leaders for each chalk supervise the preparation for movement operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that shoring, floor protection material, and pallet dunnage (if required) were on hand and ready for use. b. Ensured that chalk integrity was maintained and chalks were properly loaded. c. Retained one copy of the final passenger and cargo manifest. d. Ensured that the unit met the station time. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for and Conduct Sea Deployment (03-3-0004)
 (DOD REG 4500.9-R) (FM 100-17) (FM 55-9)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has received movement instructions to deploy and report to a sea port of embarkation (SPOE). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit loads all available personnel and equipment and moves to the SPOE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit prepares to conduct movement operations for departure at the sea port of debarkation (SPOD). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the Military Traffic Management Command (MTMC) for equipment for the equipment operators and maintenance personnel for the port support activity (PSA). b. Reduced the vehicle's height and width according to the unit's movement standing operating procedure (SOP) and the MTMC. c. Ensured that equipment was chalked, inspected by MTMC personnel, and stenciled or marked for the ship's manifest before loading. d. Obtained the ship's manifest and the estimated date of arrival at the port of debarkation from the MTMC. e. Conducted and corrected any joint inspection deficiencies. 2. The unit deploys by sea. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Followed directives from the PSA to ensure that the forces met strategic lift requirements. b. Transferred responsibility for the equipment from the unit to the MTMC. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Perform Preventive-Medicine Measures (03-3-0037)
 (FM 21-10) (FM 21-11)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is in the field without permanent sanitation, mess, or water facilities. A field sanitation team is required to assist the unit leader in countering the medical threat. All required sanitation equipment is available in the supply area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Regular field sanitation measures are taken as prescribed in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader directs field sanitation operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected at least two soldiers for the field sanitation team. b. Directed field sanitation activities. c. Directed the battlefield stress management program. d. Enforced individual countermeasures. e. Inspected potable water, latrine, and hand-washing devices. f. Inspected the serviceability of waste disposal facilities. g. Inspected the transportation, storage, preparation, and service of food. h. Coordinated preventive-medicine support with the next higher headquarters (HQ). <p>2. The field sanitation team supervises the unit's field sanitation functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the completeness and serviceability of the field sanitation basic load. b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic load items. c. Tested the unit's water supply for serviceability. d. Monitored the employment of protective measures against arthropods and rodents. e. Monitored the employment of personal-hygiene measures. f. Inspected latrines and urinals. g. Inspected hand-washing devices. h. Monitored the employment of heat, cold, and noise protective measures. i. Provided advice, recommendations, and training needs to the commander. <p>3. Company soldiers employ field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials as specified in the unit's SOP. b. Purified nonpotable water for personal use. c. Consumed water designated as potable only. d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities. e. Employed protective measures against cold, heat, and noise injuries. f. Administered first aid for heat and cold injuries. g. Employed personal-hygiene measures. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation. * 4. Company leaders combat battlefield stress. a. Implemented the unit's sleep plan. b. Implemented task rotation and restriction procedures. c. Implemented stress-coping and stress management techniques. d. Evacuated those soldiers showing serious stress signs and those soldiers not recuperating from current stress illness.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-0102	SUPERVISE UNIT PREVENTIVE MEDICINE AND FIELD SANITATION PROCEDURES	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1008	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR HEAT INJURIES	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1009	GIVE FIRST AID FOR FROSTBITE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Treat Casualties (08-2-0003.03-00CT)
 (FM 21-11) (AR 350-41) (AR 600-8-1)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5) (FM 8-10)
 (FM 8-10-1) (FM 8-10-6) (FM 8-10-7)
 (FM 8-285) (FM 8-42) (FM 8-55)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has sustained casualties and has no organic medical treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded and may have chemical contamination or nonbattle injuries. Some unit members have been assigned the additional duty of combat lifesaver. Unit personnel are performing first aid (self-aid/buddy-aid) treatment, and combat lifesavers are providing enhanced first aid treatment until medical treatment personnel arrive. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. Higher headquarters's (HQ) tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

NOTE: This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 except when treating nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) casualties. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for casualties according to Field Manual (FM) 21-11, FM 8-285, and combat lifesaver certification standards. At MOPP 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to provide treatment and limit the type of treatment provided.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders supervise first aid treatment of casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed a treatment plan. b. Monitored the treatment for compliance with FM 21-11 and to ensure that all casualties were treated. c. Directed the employment of combat lifesavers to treat casualties. d. Reported casualties, as required. e. Coordinated the replenishment of Class VIII supplies with the higher HQ's logistics element according to the TSOP. f. Directed the distribution of Class VIII supplies and equipment according to the TSOP. g. Enforced quality control procedures for Class VIII supplies issued to unit elements. 2. Unit personnel survey casualties, checking them for-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Responsiveness. b. Breathing. c. Bleeding. d. Head injury. e. Shock. f. Fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures. g. Burns. 3. Unit personnel administer lifesaving first aid treatment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Cleared all objects from the casualty's throat. b. Used the jaw thrust method to open the airway if a cervical spine injury was suspected. c. Performed mouth-to-mouth resuscitation to restore the casualty's breathing according to cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) procedures. <p>4. Unit personnel control hemorrhage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Applied dressing and bandages. b. Applied manual direct pressure to wounds. c. Elevated extremities. d. Applied pressure dressings to wounds. e. Applied tourniquets as a last resort. <p>5. Unit personnel dress wounds.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Applied occlusive dressings to open chest wounds, if possible. b. Applied dressings to open abdominal wounds. c. Applied dressings to open head wounds. <p>6. Unit personnel splint suspected fractures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employed available material to splint injuries. b. Splinted fractures in the position found. c. Restricted the movement of extremities. d. Checked circulation for impairment. <p>7. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment to casualties with burns.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Extinguished thermal burn agents. b. Removed chemical burn agents. c. Eliminated any electrical burn source. d. Uncovered the burn unless it was stuck to the clothing or a chemical environment existed. e. Applied a field dressing, if appropriate. <p>8. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for environmental injuries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Administered treatment for heat injuries. b. Administered first aid for frostbite. <p>9. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for chemical casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Took immediate protective steps to protect self and warn others according to FM 8-285. b. Protected casualties from further contamination. c. Administered nerve agent antidotes according to FM 8-285. d. Administered the convulsant antidote for nerve agents (CANAs), if required. e. Decontaminated casualties according to FM 8-285, if necessary. <p>10. Unit personnel prevent shock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positioned casualties in the correct antishock position according to FM 21-11. b. Loosened casualties' clothing and equipment. c. Prevented casualties from chilling or overheating. d. Calmed casualties by reassuring them. <p>11. Unit combat lifesavers perform enhanced first aid treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evaluated casualties for the condition and +type of treatment needed. b. Measured casualties' vital signs. c. Inserted an oropharyngeal airway in unconscious casualties. d. Applied splints to fractured limbs. e. Administered first aid to chemical-agent casualties. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Initiated an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock. g. Identified environmental injuries. h. Treated environmental injuries. i. Managed battle fatigue casualties.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
04-8310.00-3007	Evaluate a Casualty	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3008	Clear an Object From the Throat of a Conscious Casualty	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3009	Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3010	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3011	Put on a Tourniquet	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3012	Prevent Shock	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3013	Splint a Suspected Fracture	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3014	Give First Aid for Burns	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3016	Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3018	Give First Aid for Frostbite	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3020	Give First Aid for Heat Injuries	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3024	Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3025	Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3026	Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound	MOS O COM 9
081-831-0010	MEASURE A PATIENT'S RESPIRATIONS	MOS E COM 9
081-831-0011	MEASURE A PATIENT'S PULSE	MOS E COM 9
081-831-0012	MEASURE A PATIENT'S BLOOD PRESSURE	MOS E COM 9
081-831-0013	MEASURE A PATIENT'S TEMPERATURE	MOS E COM 9
081-831-0038	TREAT A CASUALTY FOR A HEAT INJURY	MOS E COM 9
081-831-0039	TREAT A CASUALTY FOR A COLD INJURY	MOS E COM 9
081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1003	PERFORM FIRST AID TO CLEAR AN OBJECT STUCK IN THE THROAT OF A CONSCIOUS CASUALTY	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1005	PERFORM FIRST AID TO PREVENT OR CONTROL SHOCK	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1007	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR BURNS	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1008	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR HEAT INJURIES	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1009	GIVE FIRST AID FOR FROSTBITE	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1025	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1026	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN CHEST WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1033	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN HEAD WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1034	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR A SUSPECTED FRACTURE	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1042	PERFORM MOUTH-TO-MOUTH RESUSCITATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-833-0015	SURVEY A CASUALTY	MOS E COM 9
081-833-0016	INSERT AN OROPHARYNGEAL AIRWAY (J TUBE)	MOS E COM 9
081-833-0033	INITIATE AN INTRAVENOUS INFUSION	MOS E COM 9
081-833-0083	TREAT A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY IN THE FIELD	MOS E COM 9
081-833-0084	TREAT A BLOOD AGENT (HYDROGEN CYANIDE) CASUALTY IN THE FIELD	MOS E COM 9
081-833-0085	TREAT A CHOKING AGENT CASUALTY IN THE FIELD	MOS E COM 9
081-833-0086	TREAT A BLISTER AGENT CASUALTY (MUSTARD, LEWISITE, PHOSGENE OXIME) IN THE FIELD	MOS E COM 9
081-833-0103	PROVIDE CARE FOR A SOLDIER WITH SYMPTOMS OF BATTLE FATIGUE	MOS E COM 9
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

ELEMENT: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-C319.03-1319)
(FM 4-20.108)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Since normal supply support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop.

NOTE: Airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Supplies, equipment, and rigging gear are derigged and recovered. The time to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The company requests supplies and equipment by airdrop. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the required supplies and equipment. b. Identified the drop zone (DZ). c. Stated the required date and time of the airdrop request. d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) section. * 2. The company commander and element leaders develop an airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer. b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4 section. c. Coordinated a survey of the DZ or the area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat control team (CCT), or the DZ support team (DZST) through the Intelligence Officer (US Army) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) sections. d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans. e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment. f. Coordinated transportation and material-handling equipment (MHE) support with the S4 section. g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation, the recovery plan, and alternative plans. 3. The company receives supplies and equipment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secured the DZ or the AO. b. Derigged supplies and equipment. c. Recorded shortages. d. Identified damaged items. e. Evacuated supplies and equipment. f. Retrieved airdrop rigging equipment. g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed. h. Inspected the DZ to make certain no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind. i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4 section. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4 sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 MAINTENANCE SECTION
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 NBC RECON PLT HQ
 3 RECON SQDS (6 TMS)
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 RECON PLATOON HQ
 4 RECON SQUADS
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 RECON PLATOON
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 RECON PLT 3 SQDS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 Company
 3 RECON PLT HQ
 12 RECON SQUADS
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.03-1014)
 (FM 3-19.40) (FM 19-4) (FM 21-75)
 (FM 27-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates EPWs according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element searches EPWs. a. Removed all weapons and documents of intelligence value.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Returned personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</p> <p>c. Gave prisoners receipts for the personal property taken.</p> <p>d. Tagged each EPW and each item removed from him with necessary information, to include the date and the time of capture, the place (grid coordinate) of capture, the capturing unit, and the circumstances of capture.</p> <p>2. The element segregates EPWs.</p> <p>a. Segregated EPWs by rank, sex, deserter, civilian, nationality, and ideology when possible.</p> <p>b. Turned wounded EPWs over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels.</p> <p>3. The element silences EPWs.</p> <p>a. Prevented EPW leaders from giving orders.</p> <p>b. Prevented EPWs from planning an escape.</p> <p>c. Did not talk in front of EPWs, except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</p> <p>4. The element safeguards EPWs.</p> <p>a. Removed EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</p> <p>b. Did not allow anyone to abuse EPWs.</p> <p>c. Treated EPWs humanely.</p> <p>d. Logged EPWs in and out as quickly as possible.</p> <p>e. Advised the EPW collection point of prisoners en route.</p> <p>f. Exploited intelligence information.</p> <p>5. The element tags EPWs with Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745.</p> <p>a. Annotated the tag with the--</p> <p>(1) Date and the time of capture.</p> <p>(2) Capturing unit.</p> <p>(3) Grid coordinates of capture.</p> <p>(4) Circumstance of capture.</p> <p>b. Attached Part A to the EPW.</p> <p>c. Retained Part B for the unit's records.</p> <p>d. Attached Part C to the property.</p> <p>e. Protected EPWs against insults.</p> <p>f. Protected EPWs against public curiosity.</p> <p>g. Provided medical attention and evacuated sick and wounded EPWs.</p> <p>6. The element speeds EPWs to the rear.</p> <p>a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the unit had EPWs.</p> <p>b. Removed EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point.</p> <p>c. Exploited intelligence information.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (Company) (19-3-3105.03-2305)
 (FM 3-19.40) (FM 19-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company has captured enemy documents and equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company processes documents and equipment according to instructions and time limits established by higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The company tags all captured documents and equipment, annotating the-- a. Type of document or equipment, such as maps, photographs, rifle, or radio. b. Date and the time of capture. c. Place of capture (grid coordinates). d. Capturing unit. e. Circumstances of capture. f. Prisoner's name, if taken from an enemy prisoner of war (EPW). * 2. The company commander reports to higher HQ. The information includes the-- a. Type of document or equipment. b. Date and the time of capture. c. Capturing unit. d. Place of capture (grid coordinates). * 3. The company commander disposes of documents and equipment according to guidance received from higher HQ. a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned captured equipment. b. Evacuated captured documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conceal or Destroy Items of Tactical Value (19-OPFOR-1015)

CONDITION: Opposing forces (OPFOR) soldiers surrender documents and equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempt to conceal or destroy items of tactical value.

STANDARD: OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. 1. Prevent successful capture of documents and equipment. 2. Destroy documents and equipment. 3. Remove identifying markings from equipment. 4. Remove the unit's identifying insignia. 5. Provide misleading information.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Transport Casualties (08-2-C316.03-00CT)

(FM 8-10-6)	(AR 200-1)	(AR 385-10)
(AR 600-8-1)	(FM 100-5)	(FM 12-6)
(FM 21-11)	(FM 3-4)	(FM 3-5)
(FM 57-38)	(FM 8-10)	(FM 8-10-1)
(FM 8-285)	(FM 8-42)	(FM 8-55)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the higher headquarters's (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TSOP, the OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to transport casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TSOP. b. Identified casualty collection points. c. Identified transport requirements. d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport. e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with the higher HQ's personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TSOP. f. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and the higher HQ's operations element. g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel. h. Forwarded casualty feeder reports and witness statements to the higher HQ's personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TSOP. <p>2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties. <p>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.03-00CT for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Collected classified documents such as signal operation instructions (SOI) or standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists. c. Reported casualties, as required. d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TSOP. e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the unit's HQ according to the TSOP. <p>3. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and the injury. b. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <p>a. Identified the litter teams. b. Constructed improvised litters from available material, as required. c. Secured casualties on the litter. d. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>5. Unit personnel transport casualties to a medical-treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles.</p> <p>a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6. b. Secured casualties in the vehicle. c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>* 6. The commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation.</p> <p>a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPORD, and the TSOP. b. Selected the landing site, which provided sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and takeoff according to FM 8-10-6 and FM 57-38. c. Before the aircraft's arrival, supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about. d. Supervised security of the landing site according to the TSOP.</p> <p>7. Unit personnel assist in loading the ambulance.</p> <p>a. Employed proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6. b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew. c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort. d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TSOP. e. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.</p> <p>8. Unit personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <p>a. Assumed MOPP 4. b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TSOP. c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties were en route to their location. d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station. e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.</p> <p>9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties.</p> <p>a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TSOP. b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before their evacuation. c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TSOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-8310.06-4024	Supervise the Evacuation of Casualties and Patients	MOS O COM 9
01-8310.06-4036	Request Patient Evacuation	MOS O COM 9
031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	MOS E COM 9
04-8310.00-1016	Request Army Aeromedical Evacuation (081-831-0101)	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3027	Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry	MOS O COM 9
04-8310.00-3028	Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter	MOS O COM 9
081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1040	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A ONE-MAN CARRY	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1041	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A TWO-MAN CARRY OR AN IMPROVISED LITTER	STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
08-2-0003.03-00CT	Treat Casualties	ARTEP 3-207-10-MTP ARTEP 3-219-D60-MTP ARTEP 3-457-10-MTP ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP ARTEP 3-477-10-MTP ARTEP 71-XX-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-C318.03-1008)
 (FM 10-64) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available. The task is performed by nonmortuary affairs personnel. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials.

NOTE: At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) level 4, only those tasks deemed mission essential by the commander are performed. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company either recovers killed in action (KIA) soldiers and evacuates them to a designated mortuary affair collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. The locations of emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander designates a search and recovery team. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected team leaders. b. Issued guidance. * 2. The search and recovery team leader prepares for the search. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed a map or aerial reconnaissance of the search area. b. Identified additional support requirements. c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ. d. Identified the search pattern to be used. e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ. f. Coordinated security of the area with higher HQ. * 3. The search and recovery team leader supervises the search, recovery, and evacuation operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed search and recovery teams on operational procedures. b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches, if available, and NBC agent tags. c. Assigned the search area. d. Monitored search and recovery team operations for compliance with the TSOP and the commander's guidance. e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ. f. Forwarded a situation report (SITREP) according to the TSOP to higher HQ. 4. Search and recovery teams conduct the search. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Checked the immediate area for mines or booby traps. b. Searched assigned areas for remains and personal effects. c. Marked terrain locations of remains with pegs. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Collected all disassociated personal effects. e. Recorded the eight-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.</p> <p>5. Search and recovery teams recover remains. a. Established tentative identification. b. Attached an NBC tag or a tag marked with a large "C" to contaminated or contagious remains. c. Attached personal effects to the remains. d. Shrouded remains with available material. e. Prepared a sketch of the recovery site. f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.</p> <p>6. Search and recovery teams evacuate the remains. a. Verified that personal effects were attached to the remains. b. Loaded remains in ground transportation feet first, in aircraft head first. c. Transported remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary affair collection point.</p> <p>* 7. The search and recovery team leader supervises emergency burials. a. Identified the specific burial site. b. Supervised the marking of the grave site. c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</p> <p>8. Search and recovery teams perform emergency burials. a. Prepared the grave site. b. Placed remains in the grave. c. Marked all grave sites. d. Buried United States (US) , allied, and enemy forces remains and their personal effects in separate grave sites.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Provide Administrative Support (03-2-3016)
 (FM 12-6) (AR 380-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is deployed in combat support operations. The company headquarters (HQ) administration section has received award and Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ) input, personnel finance and records action information, and other administrative actions from the commander, first sergeant, or platoons or from outside of the company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company and administrative support requirements are completed promptly and accurately according to applicable regulations and the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The first sergeant supervises administrative personnel in providing administrative support to the company. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Distributed correspondence and documents using an established routing scheme. b. Maintained classified documents. c. Maintained a suspense system. d. Managed files and records. e. Managed finance transmittal letters. f. Reviewed documents for accuracy, completeness, consecutive numbering, and preparation of sufficient copies; submitted documents and correspondence in a timely manner. g. Prepared and maintained a reading file. 2. The HQ administrative section provides administrative support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received actions, logged in receipts, and checked for errors and validity. b. Consolidated and prioritized actions. c. Prepared the appropriate forms. d. Checked for completeness and corrected errors. e. Dispatched approved actions to higher HQ, if required, for further action. f. Managed unit orders. g. Maintained sufficient quantities of publications and blank forms. Controlled accountable and controlled forms. h. Provided the required administrative supplies and equipment. i. Provided limited reproduction support. j. Provided mail pickup and distribution service that included-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Prompt mail pickup from the postal activity. (2) Safeguard of mail delivery to the addressee or his agent. (3) Annotation of undeliverable mail and its return to the postal activity within 24 hours after receipt. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-C320.03-1009)
 (DA PAM 710-2-1) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company headquarters (HQ) is receiving requests for supplies from subordinate elements. Equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but additional supplies may be required. Extra small arms and ammunition are stored in the supply area. The unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and battalion operation order (OPORD) are available. The supply area has been established and supply support is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Equipment and supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the TSOP and OPORD. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, unit supply support is reduced to minimum-essential actions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander directs unit supply operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected supply records and status to ensure compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TSOP. b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand. c. Inspected the unit's equipment, weapons, and ammunition storage areas for compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TSOP. d. Directed the issue of supplies and equipment according to the battalion's guidance and the TSOP or both sustainment controls. * 2. The supply sergeant supervises the unit supply. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected the supply status to determine total assets. b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand. c. Developed supply storage plans. d. Monitored supply transactions to ensure compliance with established supply procedures. e. Supervised the control of weapons and ammunition. f. Prepared input to the material condition status report (MCSR). 3. Supply personnel request additional supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated requirements with the elements. b. Calculated resupply requirements. c. Recorded requests on appropriate document registers. d. Forwarded resupply requests to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) section. 4. Supply personnel receive supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition. b. Recorded the receipt on appropriate document registers. c. Stored supplies according to storage plans. d. Notified the requesting element of the availability of supply for issue. 5. Supply personnel issue supplies. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Processed supply requests according to the appropriate regulations and directives and the TSOP. b. Prepared transaction documents according to the appropriate regulations and directives and the TSOP. c. Issued supplies as prescribed by the commander's guidance. d. Maintained the prescribed copies of transactions according to the appropriate regulations and directives. 6. Supply personnel maintain small arms and ammunition. a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition according to the appropriate regulations and command policies. b. Requested ammunition resupply from the S4 section. c. Performed unit-level maintenance on small arms. d. Forwarded weapons beyond organizational repair capabilities to support maintenance elements.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
S3-5101.00-0225	Discuss Command Supply Discipline Program	MOS O COM 3
S3-5101.00-0269	The US Army Supply System	STP 21-II-MQS
		STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Perform Unit-Level Maintenance (43-2-C322.03-1016)
 (FM 4-30.3) (AR 385-10) (AR 385-40)
 (DA PAM 738-750) (FM 9-43-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is tactically deployed and is currently engaged in combat. Unit maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative equipment. The unit maintenance area is established. The required tools, repair parts, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The company's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit vehicles and equipment are maintained in an operational-ready status according to Department of the Army (DA) standards.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander or the motor officer directs the unit's maintenance program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored implementation of the unit's maintenance program. b. Monitored unit operational levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports. c. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems. d. Coordinated resolution of maintenance problems with higher headquarters (HQ). e. Requested control substitution approval from higher HQ. f. Approved emergency field repairs. g. Prepared materiel-condition status reports (MCSRs). h. Conducted periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced. * 2. Platoon or section leaders supervise operator maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored the performance of PMCS. b. Inspected vehicles, weapons, and equipment. c. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the unit's maintenance section. d. Monitored equipment repair parts status. e. Requested approval for emergency field repairs. f. Maintained the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment. g. Provided input for MCSRs. 3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed PMCS. b. Notified supervisors of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability. c. Performed emergency field repairs. d. Assisted unit maintenance personnel with repairs and services. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The motor sergeant supervises unit maintenance personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organized unit maintenance personnel to perform unit maintenance activities. b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy. c. Supervised repair and inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to appropriate references. d. Requested approval for battle-damage assessment and repair (BDAR) from the company commander when established repair procedures could not be used. e. Supervised BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals. f. Requested approval to use controlled exchange from the company commander when required repair parts were not available. g. Supervised the use of controlled exchange for compliance with the commander's guidance. h. Supervised recovery operations to ensure that correct recovery and safety procedures were used. i. Supervised Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals. j. Coordinated the maintenance status with platoon or section leaders. k. Provided the unit's maintenance status to the company commander. <p>5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Diagnosed faults on inoperative equipment. b. Requested repair parts from the PLL clerk. c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable technical manuals (TMs). d. Requested approval for BDAR through the motor sergeant when established repair procedures could not be used. e. Performed BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual. f. Requested approval for controlled exchange through the motor sergeant when required repair parts were not available. g. Performed controlled exchange. h. Performed a final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs. i. Recorded completed work on appropriate documents. j. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents. <p>6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with the support maintenance personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the category of repair. b. Corrected unit-level deficiencies. c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance unit. d. Evacuated the equipment to the support maintenance unit. e. Verified the completion of repairs. f. Picked up equipment upon completion of repairs. <p>7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative support functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the PLL. b. Requested repair parts for the unit's equipment. c. Performed the required AOAP tasks. d. Turned in unserviceable repairable items. e. Maintained document registers. f. Maintained maintenance control records. g. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Maintained tools and test equipment. i. Maintained power-generated equipment. <p>8. Maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified the location of disabled vehicles. b. Moved on a concealed route to the disabled vehicles. c. Inspected vehicles to determine the required parts. d. Repaired vehicles on site, if possible. e. Evacuated nonrepairable vehicles to the unit's maintenance area. <p>9. Maintenance personnel react to a battle-damaged vehicle (recoverable) within a hostile area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested covering fire. b. Moved on a concealed route to the disabled vehicle. c. Towed the vehicle to a concealed location. d. Removed casualties from the vehicle. e. Performed self-aid and/or buddy aid. f. Requested medical assistance, if required. g. Evacuated casualties. h. Performed a battle damage assessment. i. Repaired the vehicle, if possible. j. Recovered the vehicle, if nonrepairable. <p>10. Maintenance personnel react to a battle-damaged vehicle (unrecoverable) within a hostile area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested direct and supporting fire. b. Moved on a concealed route to the disabled vehicle. c. Removed casualties from the vehicle. d. Treated casualties. e. Requested medical assistance, if required. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Requested disposition of the unrecoverable vehicle from the company commander. h. Conducted salvage operations. i. Prepared the vehicle for destruction. j. Destroyed the vehicle on order from the commander or his designated representative. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Draw Equipment from the Pre-Positioned Materiel Configured to Unit Sets (POMCUS) Stocks (03-3-3023)
 (FM 25-100) (FM 5-104)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit arrives in the contingency area and draws pre-positioned equipment from storage. This task applies only to units designated to draw from POMCUS stocks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit accomplishes a smooth and orderly draw of equipment in a timely and well-coordinated manner.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit draws equipment from POMCUS stocks. a. Coordinated with the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) on the POMCUS draw. b. Designated POMCUS draw team members. c. The unit leader supervised the POMCUS draw, refueling, and ammunition upload of the vehicles. 2. The unit moves to a designated assembly area (AA). a. Occupied the AA. b. Provided for force security.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Plan Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System (03-2-7001)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)
(TM 3-6665-351-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The BIDS commander conducts the appropriate planning for CLS on a continuous basis and during continental United States (CONUS) or overseas tactical deployments. The unit's movement plan, recall plan, security plan, access rosters, and current maps are available and used in the planning process. The unit may deploy as part of a larger force or deploy separate platoons (that may be widely dispersed) into a theater of operations. Alert notification activities are performed day and night under all environmental conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BIDS commander plans CLS for tactical deployments of company and/or separate platoon-size elements. The BIDS commander considers and addresses CLS operations during mobilization, deployment, employment, and redeployment operations. The plans ensure that CLS maintains BIDS-specific supplies and line replacement units (LRUs) at the 90-percent operational readiness level.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The BIDS commander leads CLS planning with support from United States Army Materiel Command (AMC) (US Army Soldier, Biological and Chemical Command [SBCCOM]), the CLS contractor, and the supported warfighter (US Army Central Command [ARCENT] or the joint task force [JTF] chemical officer). Planning includes--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The service component's (Army) responsibility to feed, house, equip, and protect contractor employees operating on the battlefield. b. Predeployment training and time-phased force deployment issues, such as chemical defense training, CLS deployment with the BIDS commander, and so forth. c. Command and control that-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Addresses the relationships between CLS and their support as a system contractor to the military. (2) Provides missions and priorities (not command) of the CLS elements and contracting officer's representative (COR) responsibilities to direct the work within the scope of the existing contract. (3) Addresses the fact that the government CLS contracting officer can appoint (in writing) the BIDS commander or a designated representative as task monitor. d. The deployment of CLS teams. e. The location on the battlefield. <p>2. The CLS plan is responsive, flexible, and fosters economy of assets in a manner that supports the mission and the intent of higher headquarters.</p> <p>3. The unit and CLS teams execute the support plan successfully.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The unit includes CLS personnel, equipment, and facilities requirements in their planning, deployment, operations, and redeployment according to appropriate tactical requirements and coordinates the requirements with higher HQ. The CLS team leader provides input to the plan, as appropriate.</p> <p>* 5. Unit leaders understand critical information regarding CLS personnel, such as their training proficiency, limits of advance, chain of command, emergency notification, security issues, Geneva Convention status, and so forth.</p> <p>6. CLS supervisors and personnel understand critical information regarding their training proficiency, limits of advance, chain of command, emergency notification, security issues, Geneva Convention status, and so forth.</p> <p>* 7. The BIDS commander and the unit's maintenance officer direct unit maintenance programs according to the tactical situation and guidance from higher HQ.</p> <p>* 8. Unit leaders supervise their soldiers in the performance of operator maintenance according to the appropriate technical manual (TM) for various BIDS and the Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System (LRBSDS) and their support systems.</p> <p>* 9. The executive officer (XO) and the unit's maintenance noncommissioned officer (NCO) supervise unit-level maintenance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Monitored the status of critical repair parts and other equipment through the CLS team leader.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Coordinated and supervised the evacuation of BIDS and LRBSDS components from the system to the unit's maintenance section.</p> <p>10. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment according to tactical guidance and the appropriate TM for that component or system.</p> <p>11. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance personnel according to the tactical situation and guidance from higher HQ.</p> <p>12. Unit maintenance personnel conduct administrative support functions according to the tactical situation and guidance from higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Establish a Command Post (03-3-0007)
 (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has received a mission and has deployed to its forward area of operations (AO). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit's command post (CP) is established to provide 24-hour operations, command, control, administration, and logistics capability.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander, executive officer (XO), platoon leader, first sergeant, or platoon sergeant arranges the layout of the CP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated the location of the CP. b. Designated the operational area for each element (operations, supply, maintenance, mess, and fuel point). c. Ensured that hygiene facilities were provided. d. Established communications with higher headquarters (HQ), unit platoons, and the base defense liaison team (BDLT) (if applicable). e. Ensured that the CP was camouflaged (and hardened, if the time and the situation permitted). <p>* 2. The commander, XO, platoon leader, first sergeant, or platoon sergeant establishes CP operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the CP was manned for 24-hour operations. b. Initiated a sleep plan. c. Ensured that incoming and outgoing shifts overlapped. <p>* 3. Unit leaders coordinate with the base defense operations center (BDOC), if applicable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forwarded a copy of the sector sketch to the BDOC. b. Identified request channels and formats for support, such as reaction force, indirect fires, military police (MP), and so forth. c. Identified intelligence reporting requirements, format, and means. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-191-1501	PERFORM INDIVIDUAL CAMOUFLAGE	MOS E 1-S 9

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Issue an Operation Order (OPORD) (03-3-0008)
 (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit leader has just received the OPORD for a mission from higher headquarters (HQ) and has all the information necessary to write his order. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mission is planned. The OPORD is prepared within the time available, in the correct format, and includes all necessary information.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander or the platoon leader plans the operation using troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received the mission completely and correctly. b. Issued a warning order to his HQ and leaders stating as a minimum, the mission, the time of the mission, specific instructions, and the time and place for his OPORD. c. Made a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. d. If necessary, a HQ leader started the unit's movement. e. Reconnoitered the operations area, making a map reconnaissance at a minimum. f. Coordinated details and requirements of the plan with supported, adjacent, and higher units. g. Completed the plan, with assistance from the higher HQ's operations section. h. Issued the complete order to the unit with two-thirds of the preparatory time remaining before the start of the mission (one-third/two-thirds rule). i. Inspected and supervised mission preparation in the HQ and the platoon and rehearsed the mission with the unit (for unit missions). <p>* 2. The commander or the platoon leader prepares paragraph 1, Situation, of the OPORD, which includes information concerning--</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enemy forces, to include their locations, strengths, weaknesses, and recent activities. b. Friendly forces, to include the mission and actions of higher HQ and supported or supporting units. c. Attachments and detachments, to include full identification and effective times. <p>* 3. The commander or platoon leader prepares paragraph 2, Mission, of the OPORD ensuring a clear, concise statement containing who, what, when, where, and why.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 4. The commander or platoon leader prepares paragraph III, Execution, of the OPORD and explains in as much detail as necessary the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Concept of the operation. The scheme of maneuver and fire support plan. b. Subordinate unit instructions for each platoon and the HQ. c. Coordinating instructions for one or more elements. * 5. The commander or platoon leader prepares paragraph 4, Service Support, of the OPORD, to include-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Rations. b. Petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) supplies. c. Ammunition. d. Medical support. e. Maintenance, recovery, and Class IX support. f. Other administrative and supply information required by the mission. * 6. The commander or platoon leader prepares paragraph 5, Command and Signal, of the OPORD. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Command information included the-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Location of the command element during operations. (2) Order of assumption of command. b. Signal information included-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Frequencies and call signs. (2) Challenges and passwords. (3) Signals and code words. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for Operations (03-3-0009)
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit occupies an assembly area (AA) or is stationary during a lull in operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel and equipment are prepared to continue the mission. The unit performs subtasks whenever the situation permits, often in response to a unit warning order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. Platoon leaders or platoon sergeants supervise unit soldiers performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) according to appropriate vehicle technical manuals (TMs). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Soldiers corrected shortcomings or reported them to the unit's maintenance section. b. The commander, operations officer, platoon leader or platoon sergeants, and the motor sergeant ensured that the maintenance section performed repairs and services in the priority prescribed by the commander. * 2. Platoon leaders or platoon sergeants ensure that soldiers refuel vehicles and equipment. * 3. Platoon leaders or platoon sergeants conduct prepare-to-fire checks and prepare weapons, ensuring that soldiers-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed functional checks on all weapons to make sure they were operational. b. Loaded magazines and ammunition according to the weapon's TM, the vehicle's load plan, and the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). * 4. Platoon leaders or platoon sergeants supervise unit soldiers performing PMCS according to appropriate equipment TMs, ensuring that soldiers-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Wore the specified protective gear, such as their-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Protective overgarment. (2) Body armor and helmet. (3) Protective mask (worn or carried). b. Fit all protective masks (whether worn or carried) and checked for leaks. c. Had their decontamination kits present and stowed in or on the mask carriers. d. Cleaned and performed functional checks on all individual weapons. e. Cleaned all functional magazines; loaded them with the appropriate ammunition and stowed them in ammunition pouches. f. Stowed grenades securely with the pins remaining bent. g. Fit and wore individual load-carrying equipment (LCE), such as backpacks, according to the unit's SOP with all strap ends secured. h. Filled canteens with potable water. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Wore identification tags around their neck, taped to prevent noise. j. Carried Department of Defense (DD) Form 2A. k. Shaved closely, cut their hair, washed, and changed their underclothes often. l. Cleaned and placed bandages on minor wounds, scratches, and abrasions to prevent infections. m. Had personal-hygiene equipment and extra clothing in their rucksacks and/or duffel bags as specified in the unit's SOP. * 5. Platoon leaders or platoon sergeants and soldiers load the vehicle according to the appropriate TM and the unit's loading plan. a. Mounted, stowed, and secured all weapons, equipment, ammunition, supplies, and personal equipment according to the unit's loading plan. b. Ensured that ammunition was readily available to replenish weapons. c. Stowed tools and camouflage nets to permit rapid access for repairs and position preparation. d. Ensured that personal equipment did not interfere with access to critical items or the employment of weapons. e. Ensured that stowed equipment did not interfere with or limit the driver's observation, the airflow to the engine, or communications equipment. f. Protected externally stowed items from possible contamination and moisture, as necessary.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-504-1008	Operate the M8A1 Alarm System	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-504-1013	Operate the M22 Automatic Chemical Agent Alarm	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-505-1011	Operate the AN/PDR27-Series Radiac Set	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
071-311-2025	Maintain an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2026	Perform a Function Check on an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2027	Load an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2028	Unload an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2126	Perform a Function Check on an M203 Grenade Launcher	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4401	Perform Safety Checks on Hand Grenades	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
551-721-1352	PERFORM VEHICLE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS)	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

- ELEMENTS:** COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 3 SUPPORT SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 4 DECON PLT HQ
 12 DECON SQUADS
 1 SUPPORT SQUAD
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 DECON SQUADS
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 FUEL/WTR SUP SQUAD
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 SUPPORT SQUAD
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS
 4 SUPPORT SQUADS
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Establish Wire Communications (03-3-0013)
 (FM 24-1) (FM 24-18) (TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is conducting a tactical mission and has temporarily halted. Field telephones, field wire WD-1, field switchboards, and signal operation instructions (SOI) are available. Situational hazards such as chemical or biological contamination may be present in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit has operational wire communications according to the operation order (OPORD) and the standing operating procedure (SOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The wire team installs the cable, distribution boxes, and telephone instruments. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Laid the field wire and installed telephones as directed by the commander, operations officer, or first sergeant. b. Tested the cable before and during the installation. c. Secured the cable at the starting point and at changes in direction of the construction to reduce strain. d. Used proper hardware and ties for hanging tension bridges and securing points. e. Tagged the cable. f. Used terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment. g. Ensured that the personnel of all overhead construction areas observed clearance requirements. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Coordinated the telephone installation with subscribers. i. Ensured that construction techniques met requirements.</p> <p>NOTE: Securing the cable overhead and policing of the cable is completed after the overall installation.</p> <p>2. Communications personnel install the telephone switchboard.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positioned the telephone switchboard. b. Grounded the equipment. c. Performed preinstallation switchboard procedures. d. Labeled the switchboard according to the telephone directory and the telephone traffic diagram. e. Connected local and trunk wire pairs. <p>3. The designated switchboard operator operates the telephone switchboard.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. In the support role, the communications noncommissioned officer (NCO) supervised operations and established sufficient manning for mission accomplishment. The team-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured that the switchboard was operational to the extent that circuits were terminated and rung down as they became operational. (2) Processed calls. (3) Updated the communication traffic diagrams, as required. b. For internal evaluation, the team-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Rung down all required circuits within 5 minutes. (2) Processed all required calls within 10 minutes. <p>4. Communications personnel perform preventive maintenance on wire or cable. The team locates and corrects faults within 30 minutes to the following specifications:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the required amount of slack in the wire or cable. b. Kept wire splices and cable hooks clear of standing water. c. Made timely replacements of cable and repaired field wire, as required. <p>5. Communications personnel recover field wire or cable to the following specifications:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recovered the wire or cable without damage. b. Wound the wire or cable evenly on reels with sufficient slack at the start to facilitate subsequent testing and servicing. c. Tagged unserviceable wire or cable. <p>6. The unit communications security (COMSEC) manager monitors unit operations for the use of COMSEC measures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that names of persons, equipment, units, and locations were not used over nonsecure communications. b. Ensured that sensitive information that had to be transmitted by electrical means was encrypted using an authorized crypto system (when using nonsecure equipment). c. Ensured that COMSEC discrepancies were reported and corrected by the wire net control station (NCS). <p>NOTE: COMSEC discrepancies are reported to the operations officer by the NCS.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
113-600-1012	INSTALL TELEPHONE SET TA-312/PT FOR OPERATION	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG
113-600-2007	OPERATE TELEPHONE SET TA-312/PT	STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 3 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 6 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 SMOKE PLT HQ
 2 SMOKE SQDS (6 TMS)
 SMK/DECON PLATOON HQ
 2 SMK/DECON SQUADS
 SMK/DECON PLT HQ
 3 SMOKE PLT HQS
 6 SMOKE SQUADS
 4 SMOKE/DECON PLT HQ
 8 SMOKE/DECON SQUADS

TASK: Conduct Smoke Operations (03-3-1003)
 (FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The smoke platoon receives an order, or an event or time occurs that indicates the platoon should make smoke. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The smoke platoon places effective smoke coverage over the selected area. The platoon starts and stops the smoke operation according to the operation order (OPORD).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The platoon leader issues a command or signal to make smoke. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Authenticated the command or signal. b. Started smoke generators, when required. * 2. The platoon leader controls operations from a smoke control point. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the point permitted the best observation of the selected area given the terrain and the tactical situation. b. Ensured that communications were maintained with the smoke positions. * 3. The platoon sergeant or leader adjusts smoke or vehicle movement patterns as required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained smoke coverage of the selected area. b. Used signals whenever possible. c. Encoded new generator position locations when the radio had to be used. * 4. The platoon leader directs the end of the mission. * 5. The platoon leader directs the fuel supply squad to pick up excess petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) supplies, if not in bulk. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided the location of the excess fuel. b. Left the POL supplies and reported the location to the company, if pickup was not possible. 6. Teams or squads prepare to move. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Loaded all equipment and supplies. b. Maintained local security. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-3-C231.03-1031)
(AR 385-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All leaders and soldiers are aware of all potential safety problems inherent in the conduct of the task. The company trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger unit members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize the risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander identifies risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), or the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks). b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process. c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when missions or conditions changed. <p>* 2. Leaders evaluate risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent based on the stated training objective. b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents. c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk. d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses. <p>* 3. The commander or leaders eliminate or reduce risk safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk. b. Developed procedures that reduced risk safety hazards. c. Prescribed safety and protective equipment. d. Briefed elements before all operations. <p>4. The element carries out safety procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received safety briefings before all operations. b. Practiced safety procedures during all mission rehearsals. c. Made on-the-spot safety corrections. <p>NOTE: Safety is a part of realism...and realism includes building safety into training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war. Field Manual (FM) 100-5 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the air land battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum possible extent ensures winning the battle. Formally, risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific time or number of operational cycles as defined for center for Army safety.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-2-C302.03-1010)
 (FM 24-1) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-19)
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is tactically deployed and must establish communications networks. Operators were briefed and issued extracts of signal operation instructions (SOI) and standing signal instructions (SSI), a numerical cipher authenticated system, operations codes, and brevity lists. Situational hazards such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability exist. General condition applies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>SAFETY: Follow all appropriate safety guidelines and regulations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Radio operators install a radio set for operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secured radios in mount. b. Connected audio accessories. c. Installed antennas. d. Performed before-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). e. Performed radio operational checks. 2. Radio operators make initial entry into the net. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained the appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from SOI and SSI. b. Entered a radio net. c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS). 3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recognized jamming or interference. b. Determined if the interference was internal or external. c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional. 4. Radio operators initiate the prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continued to operate. b. Increased the transmit power. c. Tuned the receiver for the maximum signal. d. Relocated the antenna. e. Requested a frequency change. f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor. g. Submitted the meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion (MIJI) feeder report. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used the secure communications security (COMSEC) equipment, if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KYX-15. c. Used only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI or the SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI or the SSI (not necessary in secured voice operation). e. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum (not more than 20 seconds per transmission). f. Used the lowest power settings required to communicate with the desired stations. g. Used the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Adhered to the net discipline. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5700.01-0002	Determine Call Signs, Frequencies, and Item Numbers	STP 21-II-MQS
01-5700.01-0003	Employ a Numeral Cipher Authentication System	STP 21-I-MQS STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC

TASK: Plan Thorough Decontamination Operations (03-2-3010)
 (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is supporting a maneuver unit in combat operations. Hostile forces have employed nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons against the maneuver unit. Higher headquarters (HQ) has issued an order that the chemical company is to perform a thorough decontamination to support the contaminated maneuver unit. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company commander and the company's operations section plan a thorough radiological, chemical, or biological decontamination mission for its organic platoon. The plan must be issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the platoon. The plan must be in detail and feasible for the platoon to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander must conduct and supervise the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The commander receives and analyzes the mission and identifies all unit tasks. * 2. The commander issues a warning order as soon as possible to subordinate leaders. * 3. The commander and the operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC) factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included tentative decontamination sites, routes and holding areas, water source and resupply, fire support, logistical support, and leader and signal information in the plan. b. HQ coordinated for intelligence information, security, air or indirect fire support, and medical support, and coordinated its plan with the supported unit. c. HQ drew, stocked, or coordinated for adequate water; decontaminants; MOPP gear; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) supplies; ammunition; food; and maintenance, recovery, and Class IX support for the platoon. * 4. The commander orders units to start the movement, if necessary. * 5. The commander reconnoiters the operations area, making a map reconnaissance as a minimum. * 6. The commander completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon. * 7. If the location of operations permits, the commander supervises the preparation of decontamination operations. The communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoon with priority maintenance and resupply support. 8. For company missions, the company performs a tactical road march to the decontamination site (evaluated separately). Unit leaders move the units into the designated sites. The company-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established decontamination sites. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Decontaminated soldiers and equipment. The units monitored the operation to ensure that the desired levels of decontamination were obtained. c. HQ sustained platoon decontamination operations. Company leaders monitored the status, forecasted requirements, and drew and distributed supplies without forcing curtailment of the decontamination operations. 9. If prescribed by the mission, the HQ assists the decontamination platoon's recovery operations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-505-1011	Operate the AN/PDR27-Series Radiac Set	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-507-1020	Operate the M12A1 Decontaminating Apparatus	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-507-1022	Decontaminate Equipment Using M13 Decontaminating Apparatus, Portable	STP 3-54B1-SM-TG
031-507-1041	Operate the M17 Lightweight Decontaminating System	STP 3-CST (ST) STP 3-54B1-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION
 BIDS PLT HQ
 BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-C338.03-1012)
 (FM 22-51) (FM 21-20) (FM 6-22.5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Threat Level 1; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. This task may occur in a field or military operation on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of friendly and enemy situations. c. Conveyed the leader's intentions to the soldiers. d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Quelled and prevented rumors. g. Disseminated command information, to include the availability of religious support. * 2. The company commander or the first sergeant implements the unit's sleep plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed the unit's sleep plan. b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep. c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible. d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest. e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation. * 3. All leaders implement task rotation restructuring procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks. b. Developed plans for the rotating of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy; for example, mathematical computations (duplicate efforts). * 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress management techniques. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques before deployment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Ensured that the unit implemented a "buddy system" to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders. c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed. d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit. e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 5. The company commander or the first sergeant implements stress treatment techniques. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed a plan to deal with "mild" and more serious stress or battle fatigue cases. b. Assigned soldiers who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue to the performance of simpler tasks. c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior of soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue. d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers (who did not show improvement after resting) to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities. e. Referred for medical evaluation or care those soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue or were not recuperating. * 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed. b. Provided hot rations. c. Coordinated postal support. d. Coordinated combat payments. e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support. f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items. g. Coordinated legal support. h. Advised higher headquarters (HQ) on the unit's MWR status. * 7. Leaders maintain soldiers' fitness. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored soldiers' fitness. b. Conducted physical training, as the time and combat situation allowed. c. Implemented personal-hygiene and field sanitation procedures. d. Corrected problem areas. e. Briefed the commander on the soldiers' fitness status. * 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported UCMJ violations. b. Administered nonjudicial punishment. c. Forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial. * 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other than judicial or nonjudicial proceedings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness. b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents. c. Initiated letters of reprimand/admonition. d. Initiated administrative separations. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
S3-0150.00-1002	Process Administrative Discharges	MOS O COM 3
S3-9001.18-0002	Minimize Combat Stress	MOS O COM 3

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
 HQ COMPANY SEC
 HEADQUARTERS SECTION

TASK: Maintain Company Strength (12-2-C321.03-1011)
 (FM 12-6) (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Threat Level I; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. This task may occur in a field or military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The personnel situation report (SITREP), which accounts for all company personnel, is reported daily or as required.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The headquarters (HQ) element collects strength information from subordinate sections. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Logged the SITREP and other personnel information. b. Verified strength data. c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data. 2. The HQ element processes information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidated subordinate-element personnel information. b. Determined critical shortages and cross-leveling requirements. c. Updated the battle roster. d. Prepared hasty personnel status reports (PSRs). 3. The HQ element processes replacements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed replacements on the mission, the tactical situation, company policies and procedures, specific duties, and the site or company orientation. b. Added soldiers' names to the battle roster. c. Inspected critical clothing and equipment for shortages. d. Coordinated the issue of needed items. e. Arranged the movement of replacements to their assigned platoon. * 4. The first sergeant disseminates strength information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed the commander on the unit's strength and replacement status. b. Forwarded personnel SITREPs or hasty PSRs, casualty feeder reports (Department of the Army [DA] Form 1156), and witness statements (DA Form 1155) to the supporting Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section. c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements. * 5. The company commander performs strength-management functions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed cross leveling. b. Verified combat-critical personnel requirements. c. Reviewed strength-management reports. d. Spot-checked the processing of strength information. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Briefed superiors on the unit's strength and replacement status.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. General. To test the unit's capabilities, the parent headquarters develops an external evaluation. External evaluations are administered at the discretion of the chain of command and are conducted to evaluate the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime missions. This chapter is a guide for preparing the external evaluation. Using units will modify the evaluation based on METT-TC factors and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. This evaluation assesses the tactical and technical proficiency of the unit. The evaluation focuses on the company headquarters. An analysis of this evaluation provides feedback on strengths and weaknesses and forms a basis for future training.

6-2. Management of Time and Personnel.

a. The external evaluation should last about 72 hours. The company is evaluated on collective tasks or activities. Some of these, such as planning operations, may not involve OPFOR. Assuming that ten of the selected activities require OPFOR, as little as two or as many as twenty personnel may be needed. This depends on the activities selected for evaluation.

b. Evaluators must stay with the headquarters elements before, during, and after the execution of their missions or activities to effectively conduct an AAR.

6-3. Preparation of the Evaluation. If the evaluation is to be a valid measure of the company's abilities, the evaluating headquarters must standardize available assets and plan carefully to provide the platoon with the material and assets it needs for success. This section outlines steps that the evaluating headquarters must accomplish before the evaluation begins.

a. Preparing the Evaluation Instrument. The sample evaluation scenario in Appendix A contains major missions necessary to execute the evaluation. Tasks must be added to complement the general scenario developed by the implementing headquarters. It is impossible to evaluate every task contained in the MTP; therefore, selective tailoring is necessary.

(1) Identify the major missions to be evaluated for each echelon or element using Table 2-1 in Chapter 2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (Figure 6-1, page 6-2).

(2) List each mission on the task summary sheet (Figure 6-2, page 6-3). Use a separate task summary sheet for each mission evaluated.

(3) Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheets, which are used for recording the results of the evaluation.

(4) Compile the selected missions and tasks so they will occur logically. Remember, certain tasks will be evaluated more than once for each module. The T&EO pages that are evaluated in two or more modules may be grouped for ease of evaluation.

(5) Organize the selected missions or tasks into evaluator packets for each evaluator. The following items must be included in the evaluator's packet:

- (a) Unit proficiency work sheet.
- (b) Task summary sheet.
- (c) Consolidated support requirements.
- (d) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-3, page 6-4).

(e) Environmental data report (Figure 6-4, page 6-5).

(f) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-5, page 6-6).

Unit: _____		Date: _____				
Number	Unit Mission/Task	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Unit Overall Rating and Remarks
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	

NOTE: If more space is required for remarks, use the back side of this form.

Figure 6-1. Sample Unit Proficiency Work Sheet

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. Unit designation: _____ Date: _____						
2. Unit leaders: (Circle the most correct answer.)						
Position	Rank	Time in unit (months)				
Commander	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive officer	1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Bn maintenance officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):						
4. Equipment shortages (major items):						
5. Comments:						
Observer/controller's signature:						

Figure 6-3. Sample Unit Data Sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET						
Exercise number and description:						
Date and time the exercise started:						
Date and time the exercise ended:						
1. Weather conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. Ground conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. Light conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)						
Day	Night					
Moon phase		1/4	1/2	3/4	Full	
Average range of visibility due to terrain:						
4. Remarks:						

Figure 6-4. Sample Environmental Data Sheet

- (g) Scenario (as developed by the evaluating headquarters).
- (h) Fragmentary orders, OPORDs, and messages as developed by the evaluating HQ.
- (i) T&EOs from Chapter 5.

b. Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources. The company must have adequate resources and time to train, evaluate, and retrain collective and individual skills before the evaluation. The company or element that has little or no training before the evaluation cannot do well. The chain of command must check all weapons, vehicles, radios, and special equipment for serviceability and prepare its own consolidated support requirements (Table 6-1).

Table 6-1. Sample Consolidated List of Support Requirements

Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60
Hand grenade (practice)	G818	2 per rifleman
Hand grenade fuze (practice)	G878	2 per rifleman
ATWEES (AT-4)	L367	4 each per company (inert) (viper or law)
Other Items		
Batteries BA 200 (6-volt)		12 each
Batteries BA 3090 (9-volt)		140 each
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked during the FTX according to use.		

c. Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Sites. When selecting and preparing for the field test site, consider the--

- (1) Required size.
- (2) Type of terrain. Terrain should cover and conceal routes to the evaluation sites. Avoid using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical "school" solution.
- (3) Administrative site. An evaluation headquarters is desirable to debrief evaluators and section members and to serve as a central location for data collection.
- (4) OPFOR requirements.

d. Planning Indirect Fire Simulation. Because it greatly influences the outcome of battles, reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

- (1) The fire marker control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. Due to the amount of required resources, this method may be difficult to support.
- (2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters, which will simulate the tactical FDC. The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the Os/Cs who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the O/C may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. The FM 25-series provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect

fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

6-4. Selecting the Observer/Controllers.

a. Os/Cs must know the unit's missions, organization, equipment, and employment. The senior O/C should be at least equal in rank to the unit commander and have successfully performed in that specific or similar command position.

b. The following are the minimum rank and experience requirements for Os/Cs:

(1) The company O/C will be an officer with company command experience.

(2) The platoon or section Os/Cs will be LT or NCO rank with platoon or section experience.

(3) The recorder will be an officer or NCO at the evaluation control headquarters who receives "kill" information results and time data from the Os/Cs.

6-5. Training the Observer Controllers. Os/Cs standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following functional areas:

a. Evaluation design. Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. Os/Cs must thoroughly understand the evaluation and correctly implement it.

b. Multi-Integrated Laser-Engagement System. Each O/C, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functional before each part of the scenario.

c. Evaluation Control System. This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. The unit should be briefed on the evaluation control system, its function, and the use of the results. The system includes the following elements:

(1) Rules of engagement.

(2) Os/Cs duties and responsibilities.

(3) Communication systems.

(4) The evaluation data collection plan.

6-6. Recording External Evaluation Data.

a. When the section has completed the evaluation, the senior O/C collects all packets used by the evaluation team. The sheets are completed and turned in to the evaluating headquarters. The evaluating headquarters develops the data recording instruments for the Os/Cs. The unit data sheet documents demographics information that may reflect a unit's performance (for example, new leaders, low strength). The environmental data sheet documents weather information so a comparison of missions conducted under differing environmental conditions can be made. The personnel and equipment loss report documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR.

b. The senior O/C is responsible for completing the external evaluation report using his own observations as well as those of subordinate Os/Cs. Subordinate Os/Cs use the task evaluation criteria (T&EOs from Chapter 5 and Task Summary Sheets) to determine overall proficiency in their particular

areas. These may be subjective or objective in nature and based on perceived mission accomplishments and observations. It should be noted that the objective T&EOs (the GO and NO GO responses) are included in the performance matrixes and serve as an important tool for units in determining strengths and weaknesses as related to specific missions and tasks. The senior O/C compiles the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the company O/C may be addressed in the senior O/C comments portion of the UPW.

6-7. Selecting and Training the OPFOR. Selecting and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provide one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent that realistically resembles the threat in strength, weapons, and skill.

a. Selection. Any qualified Skill Level 1 or 2 soldier can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

b. Training. The OPFOR must understand six major issues:

- (1) Installation and operation of the MILES devices.
- (2) Rules of engagement.
- (3) Threat small unit tactics.
- (4) Training scenarios.
- (5) OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.
- (6) Safety.

c. OPFOR strength.

(1) Offense. Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR are stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. They must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, but one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2) Defense. The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three-to-one superiority, because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. They must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. Once the OPFOR establish their plan, they must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

6-8. Conducting the Evaluation. The evaluation is divided into three distinct areas, each requiring preparation and coordination.

a. Preevaluation.

(1) All evaluators must conduct a map reconnaissance of the area to ensure that they understand the location of the unit boundaries, the disposition of the OPFOR, the location of other units, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's AO.

(2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and a FRAGO to control the exercise. An order is prepared for each mission in the evaluation scenario. These can be prepared by using the skeleton orders contained in the FTXs and STXs presented in Chapter 4.

(3) Unit preparatory activities include installing and troubleshooting MILES equipment, loading vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistics and administrative actions, as required.

(4) The OPFOR are placed in position and briefed while the unit is conducting its preparatory activities.

b. Evaluation.

(1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways. First, it establishes control measures in both the movement order and in paragraphs 3 and 5 in the OPORD or FRAGO. Second, it works through the higher headquarters's staff (simulated by the senior evaluator) on the control net. The team does not control in the traditional sense, instead it accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior O/C has direct verbal contact with the unit commander. All other Os/Cs do not speak to, aid, advise, point out positions, or in any way influence the unit's performance, except for a possible or actual safety issue or emergency. Evaluators are neutral and must remain so throughout the evaluation.

(2) The company commander begins with the first module when the OPORD has been issued. The tasks prescribed in the first module of the test scenario are then executed. Time constraints are adhered to and from this point on; all successive modules begin with a FRAGO or an OPORD.

(3) Senior evaluators should terminate a module when the platoon has completed all the missions or tasks in a particular module or has suffered so many casualties or damage that the module cannot be completed. The O/C must indicate the reason for the termination in the margin of the Os/Cs task summary sheet and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. The completion of each mission or task is indicated by "Prepare for Future Operations." During this phase, the senior evaluator may issue the FRAGO or OPORD for the next module. At this time Os/Cs must--

(a) Inspect all MILES equipment, record "kill" codes, and reset the equipment. Any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment is replaced.

(b) Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. This information is reported to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the company during the briefs to answer any questions. The senior evaluator directs the company to continue its mission when the FRAGO or OPORD for the next mission is given.

(4) These guidelines should be followed by the Os/Cs:

(a) Use GO or NO GO responses on T&EOs to record whether or not standards were met.

(b) Report major "kills" (vehicles and equipment).

(c) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct-fire effectiveness. Both significant firings and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(d) Ensure that all communications links and equipment are functional.

(e) Observe critical tactical events by time. Evaluators must be alert to spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission accomplishment.

(f) Record the routes of travel and the platoon/squad locations.

(g) Enforce the rules of engagement.

- (h) Enforce safety.
- (i) Terminate the mission.

c. Post evaluation. When the evaluation has been terminated, move the unit to a briefing area and perform the following actions before the unit moves back into garrison:

- (1) The senior O/C debriefs subordinate Os/Cs and compiles data (evaluation packets) for the evaluation.
- (2) If the O/C scoring system was used, the senior O/C completes the appropriate matrixes.
- (3) When completed, all evaluator packets and scoring cards are turned in to the control headquarters for recording and analyzing.
- (4) The unit O/C conducts an AAR of the unit's performance.
- (5) Each element O/C conducts an AAR of the element's performance.

6-9. Conducting the After-Action Review.

a. General. At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the unit in order to increase and reinforce learning. An AAR is not a critique; it is a simple recounting of the events the unit did well or did poorly. In an AAR, the leaders and soldiers of the evaluated unit are active participants in the process.

b. Feedback. After termination of the evaluation, provide feedback to the sections and shifts to increase and reinforce learning. Because all members of the unit participate, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer database from which key points can be drawn. For example, a soldier's assessment of a situation and the basis for that soldier's decisions are known only to that soldier. The AAR leader draws information from each member, which becomes an important part of the discussion and forms the context for discussing alternative courses of action.

c. Preparing the AAR. AAR preparation involves five steps:

(1) Review training orders and objectives. Training objectives focus discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The evaluator should be familiar with the objectives, the FRAGOs, and the OPORDs so he can note orders given by leaders that either implement objectives or deviate from them.

(2) Observe the exercise. This is an active process, and the emphasis is on noting the actions that make the difference between the unit's success and failure. The O/C need not remain close to the unit leader; he can often see more from high ground overlooking the selected area or along the route when moving. Since unit orders may identify important activities or checkpoints, the evaluator must be present when the orders are issued. Thereafter, the O/C should position himself where he can best observe anticipated critical events.

(3) Select the site and assemble the participants. After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, the AAR should be held where the majority of actions occurred, where the most critical events took place, or where this terrain can be observed. Most often the OPFOR or unit objective will be suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.

(4) Debrief the Os/Cs. While the unit is moving to the site, debrief the Os/Cs. The senior O/C must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. Therefore, the fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's major events in the order they

occurred. Descriptions should emerge from the debriefing of the subordinate Os/Cs and the OPFOR leader or controller.

(5) Review the events. After the senior O/C has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews the critical events and ranks them in terms of their relevance to the exercise training objectives and their contribution to the exercise outcome. Then he selects as many critical events as can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

d. Conducting the AAR. Conducting the AAR requires five steps:

(1) Organize the participants. When assembling the participants, the O/C or AAR leader should group them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's O/C should remain with his unit.

(2) State the training objectives. The AAR leader asks the unit leader to make a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These should be described as specifically as possible. The AAR leader also states any additional teaching points to be covered during the AAR. The number of key points should be limited to three or four in order to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) Lead the discussion. The AAR leader guides the discussion of the major tactical events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and, as the AAR proceeds, has the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagement. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader should--

- (a) Avoid giving a critique or lecture.
- (b) Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.
- (c) Suggest the players describe what occurred in their own terms.
- (d) Have the players discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened, why it happened, and how it could have been done better.
- (e) Focus the discussion so important tactical and technical lessons are made explicit.
- (f) Relate tactical events to subsequent results.
- (g) Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.
- (h) Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, phase lines, and objectives.
- (i) Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.

(4) Review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards of RA identified before the exercise.

- (a) Were effective controls put into place to avoid accidents?
- (b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?
- (c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?

- (d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?
- (e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

(5) Summarize key points. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, the O/C may have a private conversation with the section leader regarding the strengths and weaknesses and what can be done to further improve the section's performance. A good AAR leader—

- (a) Maintains order and discipline.
- (b) Reviews training objectives.
- (c) Addresses important events as they occurred and advises how the unit could have done them better. During the discussion, the leader avoids a detailed examination of events not directly related to the training objective.
- (d) Traces the chain of events so that all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.
- (c) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.
- (d) Involves participants in the discussion.
- (e) Clearly and concisely gives the summary and new training objectives.
- (f) Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models.

NOTES:

1. Subordinate evaluators may conduct an AAR after completing each module, if time permits.
2. Reference materials for conducting an AAR are TC 25-6, TC 25-20, and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A - SAMPLE EVALUATION SCENARIO

A-1. Scenario Development

a. **Modules.** The implementing headquarters must develop realistic time frames for each major mission or task. These tasks must be based on the intensity and speed of the modern battlefield and the dimensions of the field evaluation site. In the CFX evaluation scenario example, various missions or STXs have been grouped together in a module. This allows for a continuous operation, interrupted at a logical point for the AAR. The grouping of tasks to form a module is an important feature of the company evaluation. At the same time, the continuity of the exercise is maintained without needless administrative halts. The modules may be arranged in any order so long as a complimentary tactical scenario is developed. Figure A-1 is a sample scenario involving time allocation.

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
1	Conduct Preevaluation Activities (Install and Troubleshoot MILES Equipment, Load Vehicles, and Conduct Inspections)	Before start time
2	Receive a Warning Order, Issue a March Order for Movement to the Assembly Area	2 hours
3	Prepare for Operations under NBC Conditions	Included in Event 2
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	1 hour
5	Occupy an Assembly Area (Night)	1 hour
6	React to an Attack	Included in Event 5
MODULE 1		
7	Receive an OPORD	1 hour
8	Plan Decontamination Operations	6 hours
9	Establish and Operate a Voice Radio Station	Included in Event 8
10	Plan and Initiate OPSEC	Included in Event 8
11	Conduct a Tactical Road March	2 hour
12	React to an Attack	Included in Event 11
13	Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	Included in Event 11
14	Detect and Report an Air Attack	Included in Event 11
15	Engage Aerial Targets	Included in Event 11
16	Select a Decontamination Site	Included in Event 8
17	Establish a Decontamination Site	2 hours
18	Conduct Detailed Equipment Decontamination Operations	12 hours

Figure A-1. Sample Scenario Time Allocation

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
19	Sustain Decontamination Operations	Included in Event 18
MODULE 2		
20	Receive a FRAGO	1 hour
21	Change the Mission	6 hours
22	Conduct a Tactical Road March	2 hours
23	Decontaminate a Fixed Site	6 hours
24	Change the Mission	2 hours
25	Conduct a Tactical Road March	1 hour
MODULE 3		
26	Receive a FRAGO	1 hour
27	Provide Long Duration Smoke	8 hours
28	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	1 hour
29	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	.5 hour
30	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	1.5 hours
31	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	2 hours
32	Perform Radiological Decontamination	3 hours
33	Conduct a Tactical Road March	2 hours
34	Occupy an Assembly Area	6 hours
35	Perform Preventive Medicine Measures	Included in Event 34
36	Prepare for Future Operations	Included in Event 34
37	React to an Attack	Included in Event 34
38	Process Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs), Captured Documents, and Equipment	Included in Event 34
39	Operate an Observation Post	Included in Event 34
40	Detect and Report Activities	Included in Event 34
41	Submit a Spot Report	Included in Event 34
42	React to Indirect Fires	Included in Event 34
43	Report Bombings and Shellings and Mortar, Rocket, and Aircraft Fire	Included in Event 34

Figure A-1. Sample Scenario Time Allocation (continued)

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME
44	Receive a FRAGO	.5 hour
45	Depart an Assembly/Base Defense Area	3.5 hours
46	Maintain Local Security (Mounted)	Included in Event 45
47	Operate a Single Channel Voice Frequency Modulated (FM) Radio Net	Included in Event 45
48	Employ Signals Security (SIGSEC) Measures	Included in Event 45
49	Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	Included in Event 45
50	React to an Attack	Included in Event 45
51	Submit a Spot Report	Included in Event 45
52	Sustain Ammunition, Supplies, and POL	Included in Event 45
53	Sustain Personnel	Included in Event 45
54	Conduct an AAR	2 hours
TOTAL TIME		76 Hours

Figure A-1. Sample Scenario Time Allocation (continued)

b. Reaction-Type Missions. At least one or more of the modules developed by the implementing headquarters should contain a reaction-type mission. This mission is used to evaluate the leader's ability to exercise tactical initiative and sound judgment (for example, a mission might require the section or element to conduct an operational decontamination while continuing to operate the NBC Warning and Reporting System [NBCWRS]). This reaction-type mission requires the leader to plan decontamination of personnel and equipment while continuing uninterrupted operations.

c. Terrain. The evaluation site should be appropriate for the exercise. It is conducted in a field environment or in garrison. The implementing headquarters determines the location considering local requirements and directives and the training needs of the section/element.

d. Threat Development. In developing the scenario, first consider your unit's contingency missions (coordinate with the G3 or the S3). If OPFOR are needed, have the G2 or the S2 provide OPFOR capabilities and intent. Threat models used at the combat training centers are a good source in building OPFOR for the scenario. If OPFOR are not needed, the G2/S2 should still be included in providing threat information needed for any FRAGOs, OPORDs, or messages supporting the scenario.

A-2. Exercise Control.

a. O/C Control. The evaluation team controls the section/element evaluation in two ways: first, through the control measures established in paragraphs 3 and 5 of the OPORD or FRAGO, and second, through the chemical officer (may be simulated by the senior O/C). Simply stated, the evaluation team does not control in the traditional sense, but merely accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior O/C has direct verbal contact with the section/element leader; all other Os/Cs do not speak to, aid, give advice, point out positions, or in any way influence the platoon's performance except in case of a safety emergency. Os/Cs are neutral and must remain so throughout the exercise.

b. O/C Responsibilities. Once the senior O/C has issued the order for a mission and established the time and control measures, each O/C accompanies and records the activities of his assigned element as the section/element proceeds to execute the mission. Only the senior O/C exerts direct influence on the section/element's maneuver or actions. Os/Cs speak to unit personnel only to enforce the rules of engagement or safety.

A-3. Evaluator Selection and Training.

a. O/C Requirements. The following are suggested rank and experience requirements of the O/C team for testing a company:

(1) One officer (04/05 MOS 74A00H) with chemical staff and command experience to function as senior O/C.

(2) Three NCOs (E7/E6 MOS 54B) to function as section Os/Cs with appropriate company-level experience.

(3) A recorder to be stationed at the control HQ to receive information/results and time data from the Os/Cs.

b. O/C Training. O/C training is essential to ensure that the evaluation is administered fairly, correctly and, above all, in a standardized manner. To ensure standardized administration of the evaluation, Os/Cs must understand three functional areas:

(1) Evaluation design. Each module is designed to evaluate specific critical missions or tasks within the overall evaluation scenario. Every effort must be made to support that evaluation. By the same token, serious thought must be given to those conditions that obstruct an accurate assessment of the unit's performance. The Os/Cs must know the evaluation thoroughly and precisely to implement it correctly.

(2) MILES (installing, operating, bore sighting, and troubleshooting). Each O/C, regardless of position, must have expert knowledge of the company's weapons and vehicles and the MILES that attaches to each. It is an O/C's duty to ensure that all MILES equipment is functional before each module within the evaluation scenario begins. Poor training of Os/Cs may result in poor functioning of a unit's MILES equipment. This equipment must function properly because the use of MILES to objectively assess both direct kills and the unit's ability to avoid fire is a major feature of the evaluation.

(3) Evaluation Control System. The evaluation control system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

(a) Rules of engagement. Because MILES is a simulation of combat, it is not a perfect copy of the battlefield. Therefore, during the use of MILES evaluators must enforce certain rules: all participants in the evaluation must wear functional detection systems. A "superman" will quickly degrade the value of the evaluation. Once soldiers or vehicles become casualties, they no longer participate in that module of the scenario and must follow instructions of the O/C (or instructions on their casualty card, if used). This is done to ensure that casualties will become a realistic "drain" on the unit.

(b) O/C duties and responsibilities. The O/C's job is to ensure that the evaluation is executed and evaluated properly. Each O/C has specific responsibilities and duties that he must perform.

(c) The communications system. As with most tactical exercises using a control element, a single net radio capability for use by the Os/Cs is required. Trying to rely on the evaluated section or element's radios is hazardous, as well as a hindrance, to that unit. Sharing information on the control net is one of the best tools for understanding the current situation.

(d) Evaluation data collection. Each O/C must have a thorough understanding of the data collection plan and his specific responsibilities. Failure to collect data results in poor assessments of a section or element's proficiency.

d. Os/Cs should receive some classroom instruction. This requires one officer with smoke, decontamination, and reconnaissance knowledge and previous experience of ARTEP evaluations, and one small classroom. The Os/Cs then conduct a reconnaissance of the field test area, "war game" the refined scenario, and rehearse the evaluation procedures and exercise control system. It is essential that Os/Cs become familiar with the T&EO criteria in their respective areas and the desired evaluation process.

APPENDIX B - COMBINED-ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY (CATS)**B-1. General.**

a. The CATS was developed to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. Upon implementation, the CATS will support training integration of heavy, light, and special-operations forces of both AC and RC soldiers. It will enable the Army to more effectively identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources vital to achieving and sustaining the combat readiness of the total Army.

b. The CATS concept envisions an overarching strategy that will enable the Army to focus and manage all unit and soldier training in an integrated manner. At the heart of the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit training strategies that describe the events, frequencies, and resources required to train soldiers and units to standards. These strategies will provide field commanders with a descriptive menu for training. We recognize that while there may be a "best" way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units will have the exact mix of resources required to execute the strategy precisely as written.

B-2. Elements of the Unit Strategies.

a. **Maneuver Strategy.** The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depict those resources required to support these events. See DA Pam 350-38 for an example of a maneuver training strategy. The Web site for this information is <http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac>.

b. **Gunnery Strategy.** The gunnery strategy is built around weapon systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapon training. Schools identified in DA Pam 350-38 as proponents for weapons or weapon systems have developed gunnery strategies. See DA Pam 350-38 for examples of the various weapon strategies.

c. **Soldier Strategy.** The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier. See DA Pam 350-38 for an example of a soldier training strategy.

APPENDIX C - THREAT ANALYSIS

C-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia will still have the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possesses formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US or the former Soviet republics or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

C-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into our rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into our rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C².
- Agents and saboteurs.

C-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

C-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (mortars, howitzers, gun-howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. In the past, for example, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies,

civil wars, or border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

C-5. Special Situations.

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Aside from these threats, terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons to reach their goals.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special-condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

C-6. Bottom Line. The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

APPENDIX D - METRIC CONVERSION CHART

Table D-1. Conversion Chart (United States to Metric)

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
Length		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.0447	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
Volume		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
Weight		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Length		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
Volume		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
Weight		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

GLOSSARY**Section I**
Abbreviations

?	unknown
1LT	first lieutenant
5 Ss and T	search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag
AA	assembly area; antiaircraft
AAR	after-action review
AC	active component; alternating current
ACR	armored cavalry regiment
AD	air defense; armored division
ADA	air defense artillery
ALCE	airlift control element
AMC	United States Army Materiel Command
AO	area of operations
AOAP	Army Oil Analysis Program
APC	armored personnel carrier
APOD	aerial port of debarkation
APOE	aerial port of embarkation
AR	Army regulation; armor
ARCENT	United States Army Central Command
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
ATWESS	antitank weapon-effect signature simulator
BCT	Basic Combat Training; brigade combat team
BD	buffer distance; biological defense; biological detection
BDAR	battle damage assessment repair
BDLT	base defense liaison team
BDOC	base defense operations center

BIDS	Biological Integrated Detection System
BIO	biological
bn	battalion
BOS	battlefield operating system
BSA	brigade support area
BW	biological warfare
C2	command and control
CANA	convulsant antidote for nerve agents
CAS	close-air support
CATS	combined-arms training strategy
CCT	combat control team
CDM	chemical downwind message
CFX	command field exercise
cGy	centigray
CLS	contractor logistics support
cmI	chemical
COA	course of action
COMEX	communications exercise
COMSEC	communications security
CONUS	continental United States
COR	contracting officer's representative
CP	command post; checkpoint
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CPT	captain
CPX	command post exercise
CSA	corps support area
DA	Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action
DACG	departure airfield control group

DD	Department of Defense; Defense Department
DISCOM	division support command
DS	direct support
DS2	decontaminating solution #2
DSA	division support area
DZ	drop zone
DZST	drop-zone support team
E6	staff sergeant
E7	sergeant first class
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
EEFI	essential elements of friendly information
EN	Corps of Engineers; engineer
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EORA	explosive ordnance reconnaissance agent
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
EW	electronic warfare
F	frequency; fail; Fahrenheit; full
FAA	functional area assessment; forward assembly area
FEBA	forward edge of the battle area
FM	field manual; frequency modulated/modulation
FPF	final protective fire
FPL	final protective line
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FS	fire support
FSB	forward support battalion
FSO	fire support officer
FTX	field training exercise
G2	Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence)

G3	Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans)
GRREG	graves registration
GSA	General Services Agency
GSR	general support-reinforcing; ground surveillance radar
HC	hydrochloric; hexachlorethane
HE	high explosive
HMMWV	high-mobility, multipurpose, wheeled vehicle
HQ	headquarters
ID	identification; infantry division
incl	inclosure
IPB	intelligence preparation of battlefield
IR	infrared; intelligence requirements
ITEP	individual training evaluation program
ITO	invitational travel orders; installation transportation office
JTF	joint task force
KIA	killed in action
LCE	load-carrying equipment
LRBSDS	Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System
LRU	line replacement unit
LTIOV	latest time information is of value
MA	marshalling area
MACOM	Major Army Command
MANSCEN	United States Maneuver Support Center
MCC	movement control center
MCSR	materiel condition status report
mech	mechanized
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

MHE	material-handling equipment
MIJI	meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System
MOPP	mission-oriented protection posture
MOPP 4	mission-oriented protection posture, level 4
MORTREP	mortar report
MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations on urbanized terrain
MP	military police
MQS	military qualification standards
MSR	main supply route
MTF	medical-treatment facility
MTMC	Military Traffic Management Command
MTP	mission training plan; MOS training plan
MWR	morale, welfare, and recreation
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NBC	nuclear, biological, chemical
NBC 1 report	nuclear, biological, and chemical initial report.
NBC 3 report	nuclear, biological, and chemical predicted contamination/hazard areas.
NBC 4 report	nuclear, biological, and chemical monitoring/surveying results.
NBC 5 report	nuclear, biological, and chemical report (actual contaminated area).
NBCC	nuclear, biological, and chemical center
NBCWRS	nuclear, biological, chemical warning and reporting system
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCS	net control station
O/C	observer/controller
O4	major

O5	lieutenant colonel
OCONUS	outside continental United States
OEG	operational exposure guidance; operation exposure guide
OOTW	operations other than war
OP	observation post
OPFOR	opposing forces
OPLAN	operation plan
OPORD	operation order
OPSEC	operations security
P	pass
PAC	Personnel and Administration Center
pam	pamphlet
PDDE	power-driven decontamination equipment
PDF	principal direction of fire
PEG	polyethylene glycol
PIR	priority intelligence requirements
PLL	prescribed load list
plt	platoon
PMCS	preventive-maintenance checks and services
POE	point of embarkation
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POMCUS	pre-positioned materiel configured to unit sets
POS/NAV	position/navigation
PSA	port support activity
PSG	platoon sergeant
PSR	personnel status report
R&S	reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and survey
RA	regular Army; risk assessment

RAA	rear assembly area
RATELO	radiotelephone operator
RC	Reserve Component
RCMT	radio-controlled miniature target
RES	radiation exposure status
RM	reparable management; risk management
RON	remain overnight
RP	release point
S&S	supply and services
S1	Adjutant (US Army)
S2	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
S3	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
S4	Supply Officer (US Army)
SALUTE	size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment
SATRAN	satellite reconnaissance advance notice report; satellite transmission
SATS	Standard Army Training Systems
SBCCOM	United States Army Soldier, Biological and Chemical Command
SCPE	simplified collective protection equipment
sec	second; section
SF	Standard Form
SG	smoke generator
SHELREP	shelling report
SIGSEC	signal security
SITMAP	situation map
SITREP	situation report
SM	soldier's manual
SMCT	soldier's manual of common tasks
SMK	smoke

SOI	signal operation instructions
SOP	standing operating procedure
SP	start point
SPAL	simulator, projectile, airburst, liquid
SPOD	sea port of debarkation
SPOE	sea port of embarkation
sqd	squad
SSI	special skill identifier; standing signal instructions
STB	super tropical bleach
STP	soldier's training publication
STRAC	standards in training commission
STRIKWARN	strike warning
STX	situational training exercise
sup	supply
T	trained
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TAA	tactical assembly area
TAACOM	Theater Army Area Command
TAMMS	The Army Maintenance Management System
TEWT	tactical exercise without troops
TM	technical manual; team
TOC	tactical operations center
TOE	table(s) of organization and equipment
TRADOC	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
TRAINS	Threat Reaction Analysis Indicator System
TSEC	transmission security
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice

UMA	unit movement area
UMNCO	unit movement noncommissioned officer
UPW	unit proficiency work sheet
US	United States
USA	United States Army
USAREUR	United States Army, Europe
UXO	unexploded ordnance
WESTCOM	United States Army, Western Command
WIA	wounded in action
WO	Warrant Officer; warning order
wtr	water
XO	executive officer

Section II

Terms

Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP)

The cornerstone of unit training. It is the umbrella program to be used by the trainer and training manager in the training evaluation of units. The ARTEP is a complete program enabling commanders to evaluate and develop collective training based on unit weaknesses, then train the unit to overcome those weaknesses and reevaluate. Success on the battlefield depends on the coordinated performance of collective and individual skills that are taught through the ARTEP MTP.

Battlefield operating systems (BOS)

The major functions occurring on the battlefield. Each system is used by the total Army to successfully execute operations. NOTE: The blueprint is organized in three levels of war, each with its own operating systems and major functions. See TRADOC Pam 11-9., Blueprint of the Battlefield.

biological warfare

The intentional use of germs, toxins, or novel compounds to cause death and disease among personnel, animals, or plants or to deteriorate materiel. Also known as BW.

BMP

A fighting vehicle developed by the former Soviet Union. Boyevaya Mashina Desantnika [literal Russian: combat vehicle, airborne]

BTR

Bronetransporter [literal Russian: amphibious armored transporter personnel carrier (series used as APCs)]

Exercise

Collective task training designed to develop proficiency and crew teamwork in performing the task to the established standard. It also provides practice for performing supporting individual critical tasks. Exercises may be conducted in units and resident training. Types of exercises are as follows: Command Field Exercise (CFX)--A field training exercise with reduced troop and vehicle density, but with full command and control, and combat service support elements. Command Post Exercise (CPX)--An exercise in which the forces are simulated; may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters in the unit. Field Training Exercise (FTX)--A scenario driven tactical exercise used to train and evaluate critical collective and supporting individual tasks in a collective environment that simulates the stress, sounds, and wartime conditions. It is conducted in an austere field environment through all weather conditions and during night as well as day. The FTX should guide soldiers through a series of events exposing them to the rigors of duty performance during wartime operations. It combines combat arms, combat support, and combat service support. Live Fire Exercise (LFX)--An exercise designed to allow a unit/team to engage targets with its organic weapons and support. Situational Training Exercise (STX)--A short scenario driven mission-oriented tactical exercise that provides a vehicle to train a group of closely related collective tasks and drills together. Situational training exercises provide preconstructed, bite-sized, short-term exercises that are central to sustainment training for tactical mission proficiency.

Field Manual (FM)

A DA publication that contains doctrine that prescribes how the Army and its organizations function on the battlefield in terms of missions, organizations, personnel, and equipment. The level of detail should facilitate an understanding of "what" and "how" for commanders and staffs to execute their missions and tasks. The FM may also be used to publish selected alliance doctrinal publications that are not readily integrated into other doctrinal literature.

Individual training evaluation program (ITEP)

evaluation conducted in units to provide diagnostic information to the commander and MOS proponent on the effectiveness of individual training. The three primary methods used to evaluate individual task proficiency are the common task test (CTT), commander's evaluation, and skill qualification test (SQT).

Joint Task Force

Military force, under a single commander, composed of elements of two or more services. A JTF is formed to conduct a single mission and is dissolved upon completion of that mission. A JTF is formed at the direction of the Secretary of Defense, a unified commander, or another JTF commander.

Military occupational specialty (MOS) code

A fixed number which indicates a given military occupational specialty. Also known as military occupational number and specification serial number.

Military Qualification Standards (MQS) Manual

MQS manuals list all common, shared, and branch-specific critical tasks. Officers refer to the MQS manuals to determine critical tasks, professional knowledges, and special emphasis areas required to successfully perform their jobs. These manuals also provide reference courses and job aids to assist in task performance and self-development. They include --MQS I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements); Provides the basic requirements each individual must meet before commissioning; MQS II Manual of Common Tasks for Lieutenants and Captains; Concentrates on common critical tasks for all company-grade officers; MQS II branch manuals (Lieutenants and Captains); Focus on tasks that qualify the company-grade officers in a given branch; MQS III Leader Development Manual (Majors and Lieutenant Colonels); Provides additional readings to assist field-grade officers. Note: MQS manuals will be phased out upon replacement by OFS products.

Mission Training Plan (MTP)

A MTP provides comprehensive training and evaluation outlines, and exercise concepts and related training management aids to assist field commanders in the planning and execution of effective unit training. It provides units with a clear description of "what" and "how" to train to achieve wartime mission proficiency.

Mission-essential task list (METL)

A compilation of collective mission-essential tasks that must be successfully performed if an organization is to accomplish its wartime mission.

NBC report (NBCWRS)

Nuclear, biological, and chemical warning and reporting system used as battlefield intelligence to send and receive NBC 1 through 6 reports.

Risk assessment

The process used to identify potential hazard associated with training, set values on the risk elements, compare risks against training benefits, and eliminate unnecessary risks. It is an expression of potential loss in terms of hazard severity, accident probability, and exposure to hazard.

Risk management

The effective use of available resources (such as time, manpower, and funding) to prioritize and complete actions required to reduce risk, either through preventive actions or increased response capability. Risk management concepts include engineering controls, 21 training requirements, and operational procedures.

Soldier Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT)

A document which contains the critical tasks which every soldier must be able to perform in order to fight and win on the battlefield. It provides the conditions, standards, and performance measures for each common soldier critical task.

Soldier training publication (STP)

Publications that contain critical tasks and other training information used to train soldiers and serve to standardize individual training for the whole Army; provide information and guidance in conducting individual training in the unit; and aid the soldier, officer, noncommissioned officer (NCO), and commander in training critical tasks. They consist of Soldier's Manuals, Trainer's Guides, Military Qualification Standards Manuals, and Officer Foundations Standards System manuals.

Technical manual (TM)

A publication that describes equipment, weapons, or weapons systems with instructions for effective use. It may include sections for instructions covering initial preparation for use and operational maintenance and overhaul.

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 350-41	Training in Units. 19 March 1993
AR 380-10	Technology Transfer, Disclosure of Information, and Contacts with Foreign Representatives. 30 December 1994
AR 380-15	(C) Safeguarding Classified NATO Information (U). 1 March 1984
AR 380-19	Information Systems Security. 27 February 1998
AR 380-49	Industrial Security Program. 15 April 1982
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 31 October 2000
AR 380-67	The Department of the Army Personnel Security Program. 9 April 1988
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting And Records. 1 November 1994
AR 530-1	Operations Security. 3 March 1995
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. 20 October 1994

Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 3-116-Mtp	Mission Training Plan for the Chemical Brigade or Battalion. 30 January 1998
ARTEP 3-117-40-Mtp	Mission Training Plan for Chemical Section and NBC Center. 1 April 1998
ARTEP 3-207-10-Mtp	Mission Training Plan for NBC Reconnaissance Platoon. 1 April 1998
ARTEP 3-457-10-Mtp	Mission Training Plan for the Smoke/Decontamination Platoon. 30 January 1998
ARTEP 3-477-10-MTP	Biological Detection Platoon/Long-Range Biological Detection Team (Equipped with the Biological Integrated Detection System [BIDS] and the Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System [LRBSDS]). 22 April 1998

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 3964	Classified Document Accountability Record. 1 July 1979

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 350-38	Standards in Weapon Training. 3 July 1997
DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System: Manual Procedures. 31 December 1997
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

Department of Defense Publications

DD FORM 1387-2	Special Handling Data/Certification. 1 June 1986
DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996
DD FORM 2A (ACT)	Active Duty Military Identification Card. 1 July 1974

DOD REG 4500.9-R

Defense Transportation Regulation, Parts II & III. 1 April 1997

Field Manuals

FM 100-17 Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization. 28 October 1992

FM 100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993

FM 101-5 Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997

FM 10-64 Mortuary Affairs Operations. 16 February 1999

FM 12-6 Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994

FM 19-4 Military Police Battlefield Circulation Control, Area Security, Enemy Prisoner of War Operations. 7 May 1993

FM 20-3 Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999

FM 21-10 Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000

FM 21-11 First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988

FM 21-16 Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994

FM 21-20 Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992

FM 21-75 Combat Skills Of The Soldier. 3 August 1984

FM 22-51 Leader's Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994

FM 24-1 Signal Support in the Airland Battle. 15 October 1990

FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987

FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991

FM 24-35 (O) Signal Operations Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990

FM 24-35-1 (O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990

FM 25-100 Training the Force. 15 November 1988

FM 25-101 Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990

FM 27-10 The Law Of Land Warfare. 18 July 1956

FM 3-100 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996

FM 3-101-4 Biological Detection Platoon Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 9 June 1997

FM 3-101-6 Biological Defense Operations, Corps/Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 25 March 1999

FM 3-19 NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993

FM 3-19.30 Physical Security. 8 January 2001

FM 3-19.40 Military Police Internment and Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001

FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992

FM 3-4 NBC Protection. 29 May 1992

FM 34-1 Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994

FM 34-10 Division Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 25 November 1986

FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994

FM 34-2 Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994

FM 34-3 Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990

FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995

FM 34-8 Combat Commander's Handbook on Intelligence. 28 September 1992

FM 34-80 Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 15 April 1986

FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000

FM 3-50 Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990

FM 4-20.108	Airdrop of Supplies and Equipment: Rigging Military Utility Vehicle (M-GATOR) 29 June 2001
FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000
FM 5-104	General Engineering. 12 November 1986
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units And Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 55-9	Unit Air Movement Planning. 5 April 1993
FM 57-38	Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993
FM 6-22.5	Combat Stress. 22 June 2000
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 7-20	The Infantry Battalion. 6 April 1992
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon And Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 8-10	Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations. 1 March 1991
FM 8-10-1	The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 December 1994
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 14 April 2000
FM 8-10-7	Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment. 22 April 1993
FM 8-285	Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995
FM 8-42	Combat Health Support in Stability Operations and Support Operations. 27 October 1997
FM 8-55	Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994
FM 9-43-2	Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair. 3 October 1995

Other Product Types

SF FORM 700	Security Container Information. 1 August 1985
SF FORM 702	Security Container Check Sheet. 1 August 1985
SF FORM 703	Top Secret Cover Sheet. 1 August 1985
SF FORM 704	Secret Cover Sheet. 1 August 1985
SF FORM 705	Confidential Cover Sheet. 1 August 1985
TRADOC PAM 11-9	Blueprint of the Battlefield.

Soldier Training Publications

STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 3-54B2-4-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual for Chemical Operations MOS 54B Skill Levels 2/3/4. 1 September 1998
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995

Technical Manuals

TM 3-6665-349-12&P	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List for Alarm, Biological Agents, Automatic: Integrated Detection System, M31 (NSN 6665-01-392-6191). 13 July 2001
TM 3-6665-350-12&P	Alarm, Biological Agent, Automatic: Integrated Detection System, M31A1

ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP

TM 3-6665-351-10

Detection System Biological Agent Long-Range-Biological Standoff
Detection System (LR-BSDS), XM-94

Training Circulars

TC 24-20

Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988

TC 25-20

A Leader's Guide to After-Action Reviews. 30 September 1993

TC 25-6

Force-on-Force Collective Training using the Tactical Engagement
Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995

Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER _____ DATE _____

MTP TITLE _____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire. Mail to: Commandant, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-C, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-6600.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant [PSG])?

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component?

- a. Active Component
- b. Reserve Component

5. Where is your unit?

- a. Continental United States (CONUS)
- b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
- c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
- d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
- e. Other (specify)

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL.

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

- a. Has made training worse.
- b. Has made training better.
- c. Has had no affect on training.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

- a. More difficult.
- b. Easier.
- c. About the same.
- d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation.
- g. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful? _____

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand? _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND STXs.

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

- a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
- b. They help, but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.
- c. They help, but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- d. They help, but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.
- e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP? _____

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

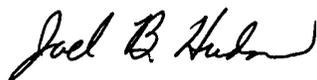
- a. Have too many pages.
- b. Are hard to read and understand.
- c. Need more illustrations.
- d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
- e. Need more information on leader training.
- f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
- g. Need more information on support and resources.
- h. Need more information on normally attached elements.
- i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.
- j. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

**ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP
28 NOVEMBER 2001**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0203602

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic Means Only.